

# 第一章 线性方程组的解法

Date.

- 两方程组等价 (一致性质? 在不为0)

方程组(1) 和 方程组(2) 互为线性组合, 其解集合相同

- 整域 (number field)

$F$  为复数集合的子集, 包含 0, 1, 并且在 +, -,  $\times$ ,  $\div$  (不含 0) 下封闭, 则称  $F$  为整域

PS: 所有整域都包含有理数域

## 方程组

$$\begin{cases} a_{11}x_1 + a_{12}x_2 + \dots + a_{1n}x_n = b_1 \\ a_{21}x_1 + a_{22}x_2 + \dots + a_{2n}x_n = b_2 \\ \vdots \\ a_{m1}x_1 + a_{m2}x_2 + \dots + a_{mn}x_n = b_m \end{cases} \Rightarrow \left[ \begin{array}{cccc|c} a_{11} & a_{12} & \dots & a_{1n} & b_1 \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & \dots & a_{2n} & b_2 \\ \vdots & & & & \vdots \\ a_{m1} & a_{m2} & \dots & a_{mn} & b_m \end{array} \right]$$

- 定理 1.3.1

若齐次线性方程组未知数个数 > 方程个数, 则齐次方程组有非零解, 从而有无穷多解

# 第一章 多项式 (Polynomials)

定义 1 用  $\mathbb{C}$  表示复数域  $\mathbb{C}$  称为数域

(1) 干至少含两元素 0, 1

(2) 干在四则运算下封闭

数域可有无限多  $\mathbb{Q}(\sqrt{2}) = \{a + \sqrt{2}b \mid a, b \in \mathbb{Q}\}$

最小数域为有理数集

定义 2 设干为数域,  $x$ -未知,  $n$ -非负整数  $a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n \in F$

形如  $a_0 + a_1x + \dots + a_nx^n$

的式子为多项式, 记为  $f(x)$   $a_nx^n$  为首项

$n$  称为多项式次数, 记为  $\deg(f(x))$ ,  $0$  为特殊多项式, 次数  $-\infty$

## 运算

$$f(x) = a_nx^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \dots + a_1x + a_0$$

$$g(x) = b_mx^m + b_{m-1}x^{m-1} + \dots + b_1x + b_0$$

$$\text{乘法 } f(x) \cdot g(x) = \sum_{k=0}^{m+n} (\sum_{i+j=k} a_i b_j) x^k \quad \text{体现结合律}$$

$F[x]$  - 对加, 乘封闭 -  $\mathbb{R}$  - 一元多项式环

## 性质

? 怎么样

•  $f(x_1)g(x_1) = 0 \Rightarrow f(x_1) = 0 \text{ 或 } g(x_1) = 0$   $\checkmark$  保持为多项式

$$\downarrow f(x_1)h(x_1) = h(x_1)g(x_1) \dots - h(x_1) \neq 0 \Rightarrow f(x_1) = g(x_1) \quad (f(x_1) - g(x_1))h(x_1) = 0$$

最高次项定  $\deg$

$$\cdot \deg(f(x) \cdot g(x)) = \deg(f(x)) + \deg(g(x))$$

自洽性:  $\forall g(x) \neq 0 \quad \deg(0) = \deg(f(x)) + \deg(0)$

### 3) 整除与最大公因式

定义,  $f(x), g(x) \in F[x]$  如果存在  $q_1(x) \in F[x]$  st.  $f(x) = q_1(x)g_1(x)$  称  $g_1(x)$  整除  $f(x)$   
记为  $g_1(x) | f(x)$  也称  $g_1(x)$  为  $f(x)$  的因子,  $f(x)$  是  $g_1(x)$  的倍数

#### 定理1 整除性质

1.  $h(x) | g(x)$ ,  $g(x) | f(x) \rightarrow h(x) | f(x)$

2.  $g_1(x) | f(x)$ ,  $g_2(x) | f(x) \Rightarrow g_1(x) | h_1(x)f(x) + h_2(x)f(x)$ ,  $h_i(x) \in F[x]$

3.  $f(x) | g(x)$ ,  $g(x) | f(x) \Rightarrow \exists \lambda \neq 0, \lambda \in F$  st.  $f(x) = \lambda g(x)$

定理  $\Rightarrow f(x), g(x) \in F[x]$ ,  $g(x) \neq 0$  则存在唯一多项式  $q_1(x); r(x) \in F[x]$  st.

$$f(x) = q_1(x)g(x) + r(x) \quad \text{其中 } \deg(r(x)) < \deg(g) \quad \text{带余除法}$$

$q_1(x)$  - 商 (quotient)     $r(x)$  - 余式 (remainder)

$Q_{n,m}(f,g,x)$                        $\xrightarrow{\text{Rem}} R_{m,n}(f,g,x)$

#### 证明 先证唯一性

$$f(x) = q_1(x)g(x) + r(x) = q_2(x)g(x) + r_2(x)$$

$$\therefore (q_1 - q_2)g = r_2 - r_1$$

$$\& \deg(q_1 - q_2) + \deg(g) = \deg(r_2 - r_1)$$

再证 存在性 (归纳法) - 算法

$$\deg(f) = n$$

假设 对  $\deg(f) \leq m$  结论成立

对  $\deg(f) = n$      $f = a_n x^n + \dots + a_1 x + a_0$

又假设  $n \geq m$      $g = b_m x^m + \dots + b_1 x + b_0$

$f - \frac{a_n}{b_m} x^{n-m} g(x) = f(x) - \deg(f) < \deg(f) = n$

由 归纳假设 存在  $q_1(x)$   $r(x) \in F[x]$

st.  $f(x) = q_1(x)g(x) + r(x)$

$$f = 1 \frac{a_n}{b_m} x^{n-m} + q_1(x)g(x) + r(x) \quad \dots \text{ 原理同大除法}$$

推论1  $g(x) \mid f(x) \Leftrightarrow \text{余数} \text{Rem}[f(x), g(x)] = 0$

推论2  $a \in F$   $f(x) \in F[x]$  则存在  $g(x) \in F[x]$  其 Taylor 展开  
st.  $f(x) = g(x)(x-a) + r(a)$  带 a  
常数  $\downarrow r(x) \Rightarrow r(a) = f(a)$   $f(x) = g(x)(x-a) + r(x)$

推论3  $a \in F$   $f(x) \in F[x]$  若  $x-a \mid f(x) \Leftrightarrow f(a) = 0$

定理2  $f(x), g(x), h(x), d(x) \in F[x]$ , 若  $h(x) \mid g(x)$ ,  $h(x) \mid f(x)$  则  $h(x)$  为  $g, f$  的公因式。若对于  $f$  与  $g$  的任意公因式都有  $h(x) \mid d(x)$ , 则称  $d(x)$  为  $f, g$  的最大公因式 (greatest common divisor) - GCD

$$d(x) = \text{GCD}(f(x), g(x))$$

2018.9.5

两种特殊情况的定义

$$\text{- } \gcd(0, 0) = 0, \quad \gcd(f(x), 0) = f(x)$$

- 多项式中最大公因式设为首一多项式

定理3 两个非零多项式的最大公因式存在唯一

证 (唯一性)

假设  $d_1(x), d_2(x)$  都是  $f(x)$  与  $g(x)$  的最大公因式

逻辑式  $d_1(x) \mid d_2(x) \quad d_2(x) \mid d_1(x) \Rightarrow d_2(x) = \lambda d_1(x) (\lambda \neq 0) (\Rightarrow \lambda = 1)$   
构造式 (存在性)

Euclidean algorithm (辗转相除) - 带余除法简化问题

$$\text{gcd}(f, g) = \text{gcd}(g, r) = \text{gcd}(r, r_1) \dots$$

证:  $d(x) = \text{gcd}(f, g)$

$$f = gg + r \quad r = f - gg \quad d \mid f, d \mid g \Rightarrow d \mid r \Rightarrow d \mid \text{gcd}(g, r)$$

· 若算得常数, 则最大公因子设为常数

定义3  $f(x), g(x) \in F[x]$ , 若  $\gcd(f, g) = 1$ , 称  $f$  与  $g$  互素 (relatively prime)

最大  $\gcd$  可写为组合形式

由 Euclid 拓展即得

定理4  $f(x), g(x) \in F[x]$ ,  $d(x) = \gcd(f, g)$  则存在  $u(x), v(x) \in F[x]$  st.

$$u(x)f(x) + v(x)g(x) = d(x)$$

证  $d(x) | f(x)$  要证  $v_s(x) = u_s(x)f(x) + v_s(x)g(x)$   $s=0, 1, \dots, k$

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} f(x) = q_1(x)g(x) + r_1(x) \\ \vdots \\ q_1(x) = q_2(x)r_1(x) + r_2(x) \end{array} \right.$$

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} r_1(x) = r_0(x) \\ r_0(x) = q_2(x)g(x) + r_2(x) \\ \vdots \\ r_{k-1}(x) = r_k(x) \\ r_k(x) = 0 \end{array} \right.$$

$$r(x) = r_0(x) = f(x) - q_1(x)g(x)$$

$$r_1(x) = g(x) - q_2(x)r_0(x) = -q_1(x)f(x) + (1 + q_1(x)q_2(x))g(x) = \dots$$

「计算应用」反推代入

理想

$$\cdot S = \{ u(x)f(x) + v(x)g(x) \mid u(x), v(x) \in F[x] \} \subset F[x]$$

$$= \langle d(x) \rangle = \{ dh(x) \mid h(x) \in F[x] \}$$

由最大公因式  $\times$  任意多项式张成

推论4  $f(x), g(x)$  互素  $\Leftrightarrow \exists u(x), v(x) \in F[x]$  st.  $u(x)f(x) + v(x)g(x) = 1$

$$u_0(x)f(x) + v_0(x)g(x) = 1 \quad (u_0 - u_1)f(x) = (v_0 - v_1)g(x)$$

TP 剩余法 因子

$$\Rightarrow f \mid v_0 - v_1 \quad g \mid u_0 - u_1$$

定理5 互素多项式的性质 因为是互素条件，性质很好

$$(1) \quad \gcd(f, g) = 1 \quad \gcd(f, h) = 1 \Rightarrow \gcd(f, g, h) = 1$$

证:  $\gcd(f, g) = 1 \Rightarrow \exists u, v \in F[x]$  st.  $uf + vg = 1$

$$\Rightarrow uf + vg \mid h \quad d = \gcd(f, gh)$$

$$d \mid f, d \mid gh \Rightarrow d \mid \underline{\gcd(f, h)} = 1 \quad (d = 1)$$

推论 1  $g(x) \mid f(x) \Leftrightarrow \text{Rem}[f(x), g(x)] = 0$

推论 2  $a \in F$   $f(x) \in F[x]$  则存在  $g(x) \in F[x]$  某 Taylor 展开  
 $st. f(x) = g(x)(x-a) + r(a)$   $\downarrow$  常数  $r(x) \stackrel{x=a}{\Rightarrow} r(a) = f(a)$   $f(x) = g(x)(x-a) + r(x)$

推论 3  $a \in F$   $f(x) \in F[x]$  若  $x-a \mid f(x) \Leftrightarrow f(a) = 0$

定理 2  $f(x), g(x), h(x), d(x) \in F[x]$ , 若  $h(x) \mid g(x), h(x) \mid f(x)$  则  $h(x)$  为  $g, f$  的公因式。若对  $f$  与  $g$  的任意公因式都有  $h(x) \mid f(x)$ , 则称  $d(x)$  为  $f, g$  的最大公因子 (greatest common divisor) - GCD

$$d(x) = \text{GCD}(f(x), g(x))$$

2018.9.5

两种特殊情况的定义

$$\text{- } \gcd(0, 0) = 0, \quad \gcd(f(x), 0) = f(x)$$

- 多项式中最大公因式为首一多项式

定理 3 两个非零多项式的最大公因式存在唯一

证 (唯一性)

假设  $d_1(x), d_2(x)$  都是  $f(x)$  与  $g(x)$  的最大公因式

$$\text{逻辑} \quad d_1(x) \mid d_2(x) \quad d_2(x) \mid d_1(x) \Rightarrow d_2(x) = \lambda d_1(x) (\lambda \neq 0) (\Rightarrow \lambda = 1)$$

构造式 (存在性)

Euclidean algorithm (辗转相除) - 带余除法简化问题

$$\gcd(f, g) = \gcd(g, r) = \gcd(r, r_1, \dots)$$

$$\text{证: } d(x) = \gcd(f, g)$$

$$f = gg + r \quad r = f - gg \quad d \mid f, d \mid g \Rightarrow d \mid r \Rightarrow d \mid \gcd(g, r)$$

· 若算得常数，则最大公因子必为常数

定义3  $f(x), g(x) \in F[x]$ , 若  $\gcd(f, g) = 1$ , 称  $f$  与  $g$  互素 (relatively prime)

最大  $\gcd$  可写为组合形式

由 Euclid 楔定理即得

定理4  $f(x), g(x) \in F[x]$ ,  $d(x) = \gcd(f, g)$  则存在  $u(x), v(x) \in F[x]$  st.

$$u(x)f(x) + v(x)g(x) = d(x)$$

证  $d(x) | f(x)$  要证  $v_i(x) = u_i(x)f(x) + v_i(x)g(x)$   $i=0, 1, \dots, k$

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} f(x) = g(x)q(x) + r(x) \\ g(x) = g_1(x)r(x) + r_1(x) \\ \vdots \\ n(x) = r_{k-1}(x) \cdot q_k(x) + r_k(x) \end{array} \right.$$

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} g(x) = g_1(x) \\ g_1(x) = g_2(x) \\ \vdots \\ g_{k-1}(x) = g_k(x) \end{array} \right.$$

$$r(x) = r_0(x) > f(x) - g(x)q(x)$$

$$r_1(x) = g(x) - g_2(x)r(x) = -g_2(x)f(x) + (1 + g_2(x)q(x))g(x) =$$

「计算应用」反推代入

理想

$$\cdot S = \{ u(x)f(x) + v(x)g(x) \mid u(x), v(x) \in F[x] \} \subset F[x]$$

$$= \langle d(x) \rangle = \{ d(x)h(x) \mid h(x) \in F[x] \}$$

由最大公因式  $\times$  任意多项式张成

推论4  $f(x), g(x)$  互素  $\Leftrightarrow \exists u(x), v(x) \in F[x]$  st.  $u(x)f(x) + v(x)g(x) = 1$

$$u_0(x)f(x) + v_0(x)g(x) = 1 \quad (u_0 - v_0)f(x) = (v_0 - u_0)g(x)$$

TP差分析法因式

$\Rightarrow f \nmid v_0 - u_0 \quad g \nmid u_0 - v_0$

定理5 互素多项式的性质 因为是互素条件，性质很好

$$(1) \quad \gcd(f, g) = 1 \quad \gcd(f, h) = 1 \Rightarrow \gcd(f, gh) = 1$$

证:  $\gcd(f, g) = 1 \Rightarrow \exists u, v \in F[x]$  st.  $uf + vg = 1$

$$\Rightarrow uf + vg \mid h \quad d = \gcd(f, gh)$$

$$d \mid f, d \mid gh \Rightarrow d \mid \underline{\gcd(f, gh)} = 1 \quad (d = 1)$$

↑ 以为公因式

$$1) \gcd(f, g) = 1 \quad f \mid gh \Rightarrow f \mid h$$

证  $\exists u, v$ , s.t.  $uf + vg = 1 \Rightarrow ufh + vgh = h \Rightarrow f \mid h$

2)  $f \mid h, g \mid h, \gcd(fh) = 1 \Rightarrow fg \mid h$

因子

$$h = d_1 f = d_2 g \dots \text{公因式} \Rightarrow f \mid d_2 g \Rightarrow f \mid d_2 \Rightarrow d_2 = d_3 f$$

$$\therefore h = d_2 g = d_3 fg \Rightarrow fg \mid h$$

$$\rightarrow \begin{cases} u_0 - v = hf \\ u = u_0 + hg \end{cases} \quad \begin{cases} h \in \mathbb{P} \\ \deg(u_0) < \deg(f) \\ \deg(h) < \deg(g) \end{cases}$$

例 4 求多项式  $u(x), v(x)$  s.t.  $x^m u(x) + (1-x)^n v(x) = 1$

解:  $\gcd(x^m, (1-x)^n) = 1 \quad \deg(u) < n \quad \deg(v) < m \quad \text{唯一最简}$

待定系数法:  $u(x) = \sum_{i=0}^{m-1} u_i x^i \quad v(x) = \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} v_j (1-x)^j$

Taylor

$$u(x) = x^{-m} (1 - (1-x)^n v(x)) \quad u(1) = 1 \quad u'(1) = m \dots \quad u^{(m)}(1) = -m(m+1)\dots(-m+n-1)$$

$$u(x) = \sum_{i=0}^{m-1} \frac{u^{(i)}(1)}{i!} (x-1)^i = \sum_{i=0}^{m-1} C_{m+i} (1-x)^i \quad \text{同理乘上?}$$

直接判别是否互素

$$\begin{cases} f(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \dots + a_0 \quad a_n \neq 0 \end{cases} \quad \text{利用性质}$$

$$\begin{cases} g(x) = b_m x^m + b_{m-1} x^{m-1} + \dots + b_0 \quad b_m \neq 0 \end{cases}$$

引理 若  $f, g$  存在公因式  $\Leftrightarrow$  多项式  $A(x), B(x)$   $\deg(A) \leq m, \deg(B) \leq n$

s.t.  $A(x)f(x) + B(x)g(x) = 0$

$$\Leftarrow A \mid f + B \mid g \quad \text{假设 } \gcd(f, g) = 1 \quad \text{次数问题}$$

$$Af = -Bg \Rightarrow g \mid Af \Rightarrow g \mid A \Rightarrow A = 0 \quad \text{矛盾}$$

$$f \mid B \Rightarrow B = 0 \quad \text{矛盾}$$

$$A = \sum_{i=0}^{m-1} A_i x^i \quad B = \sum_{j=0}^{n-1} B_j x^j$$

$$Af + Bg = 0 \Rightarrow \sum A_i x^i + \sum B_j x^j = 0$$

$f(x) = a_0 x^n + \dots + a_1 x + a_0$

$a_0$	$\dots$	$b_0$	$\dots$	$A_0$	$\dots$	$= 0$
$a_1$	$\dots$	$b_1$	$\dots$	$A_1$	$\dots$	Sylvester
$\vdots$	$\vdots$	$\vdots$	$\vdots$	$\vdots$	$\vdots$	Sylvestre
$a_m$	$\dots$	$b_m$	$\dots$	$A_m$	$\dots$	
$\dots$	$\dots$	$\dots$	$\dots$	$D_0$	$\dots$	
$a_n$	$\dots$	$b_n$	$\dots$	$\vdots$	$\vdots$	
$\dots$	$\dots$	$\dots$	$\dots$	$B_{m+1}$	$\dots$	
$m$ 列	$n$ 行	$(m+n) \times (m+n)$				

→ 结式 (Resultant)

定理 6.  $f$  与  $g$  有公因式  $\Leftrightarrow \det(\text{Syl}(f, g, x)) = 0$  行列式  
 ↓  
 有非 0 解

补充: 称  $\text{Res}(f, g, x) = \det(\text{Syl}(f, g, x))$  为  $f$  与  $g$  的结式 (Resultant)

$$\text{E.g. 1. } f(x) = x^4 - 4 \quad g(x) = x^3 + x^2 - 2x - 2 \quad 7 \text{ 阶}$$

$$\text{Res}(f, g, x) = \begin{vmatrix} -4 & & & & & & \\ 0 & -4 & & & & & \\ 0 & 0 & -4 & & & & \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 & -2 & & \\ 1 & 0 & 0 & 1 & 1 & -2 & \\ & 1 & 0 & & 1 & 1 & \\ & & & & 1 & & \end{vmatrix} = 0$$

技术应用 2: 消元

$$\text{E.g. 2} \quad \begin{cases} x^2 + y^2 - 4 = 0 \\ 9x^2 + y^2 - 2xy - 1 = 0 \end{cases} \quad g(y) = \text{Res}(D_1, D_2, x)$$

(推广 n 元性质)

定理 8  $f_1(x), \dots, f_s(x), h(x), d(x) \in F[x]$  如果  $d(x)$  是  $f_1(x), \dots, f_s(x)$  的公因式, 且对它们任一公因式  $h(x)$  都有  $h(x) | d(x)$ , 称  $d(x)$  是  $f_1(x), \dots, f_s(x)$  的最大公因式

$$\Rightarrow \gcd(0, 0, \dots, 0) = 0 \quad \gcd(0, f_1(x), 0, 0, \dots, f_s(x)) = \gcd(f_1(x), f_2(x), \dots, f_s(x))$$

定理 9 最大公因式存在唯一

$$\gcd(f_1, \dots, f_s) = \gcd(\gcd(f_1, \dots, f_{s-1}), f_s)$$

证明: 唯一性 与 5>2 相同

存在性 记  $\tilde{d} = \gcd(f_1, \dots, f_{s-1}) \quad \gcd(f_1, \dots, f_s) = d$

$\Leftrightarrow$  证  $d = \gcd(\tilde{d}, f_s)$  算 2 例

① 存在  $d | f_1, \dots, f_s \quad d | \tilde{d} \Rightarrow d | f_1, \dots, f_s$  证公因

另一方面  $d | f_1, \dots, f_s \Rightarrow d$  是  $(f_1, \dots, f_s)$  公因式

② 设  $h(x)$  是  $(f_1, \dots, f_s)$  公因式  $h(x) | f_i \quad i=1, 2, \dots, s$  证最大

$$\Rightarrow h | \tilde{d}, h | f_s \quad \because h | \gcd(\tilde{d}, f_s) = d$$

定理 8  $f_1, \dots, f_s \in F[x] \quad \gcd(f_1, \dots, f_s) = d \quad \exists u_1, \dots, u_s \in F[x] \text{ st.}$

$$u_1 f_1 + u_2 f_2 + \dots + u_s f_s = d$$

证明: 用归纳法 5>2 成立

假定对  $s-1$  成立, 下证  $s$ :

存在  $\tilde{u}_1, \dots, \tilde{u}_{s-1} \in F[x]$  st.  $\tilde{u}_1 f_1 + \tilde{u}_2 f_2 + \dots + \tilde{u}_{s-1} f_{s-1} = \tilde{d}$

$\times d = \gcd(\tilde{d}, f_s)$  为 2 例

$\exists h, u_s$  st.  $h \tilde{d} + u_s f_s = d$

$$\therefore h(\tilde{u}_1 f_1 + \tilde{u}_2 f_2 + \dots + \tilde{u}_{s-1} f_{s-1}) + u_s f_s = d$$

#

ADD: 评论的逻辑

· 定义 6 称  $f_1(x), \dots, f_s(x)$  互素, 若  $\gcd(f_1, \dots, f_s) = 1$

· 定理 9  $f_1(x), \dots, f_s(x)$  互素  $\Leftrightarrow \exists u_1, \dots, u_s \in F[x]$  st.

$$u_1f_1 + \dots + u_sf_s = 1$$

互素 vs. 两两互素  $(x-1)(x+1)$   $(x-2)(x-3)$   $(x-3)(x-1)$



· 定义 7  $f_1(x), \dots, f_s(x) \in F[x]$  如果  $f_i(x) | h(x) \quad i=1, \dots, s$  那  $h(x)$  为  $f_1, \dots, f_s$  公倍式  
如果  $d(x)$  为  $f_1, \dots, f_s$  公倍式 且对  $f_1, \dots, f_s$  任何公倍式  $h$  都有  $d | h$   
则称  $d$  为  $f_1, \dots, f_s$  的最小公倍式 (least common multiplier)  
 $\triangleright d(x) = \text{lcm}(f_1, \dots, f_s)$

· 定义 8 设  $f_1(x), f_2(x), g(x) \in F[x]$  如果  $g(x) | f_1 - f_2$  称  $f_1$  与  $f_2$  模  $g$  同余  
(congruent module  $g(x)$ )  $f_1(x) \equiv f_2(x) \pmod{g(x)}$

整除及模的联系

- 命题 若  $f_1 \equiv h_1 \pmod{g}$   $f_2 \equiv h_2 \pmod{g}$

$$f_1 + f_2 \equiv h_1 + h_2 \pmod{g} \quad f_1 f_2 \equiv h_1 h_2 \pmod{g}$$

证:  $g | f_1 - h_1 \quad g | f_2 - h_2$

$$\text{满足同余 } g | f_1 + f_2 - (h_1 + h_2) = (f_1 - h_1) + (f_2 - h_2)$$

$$f_1 f_2 - h_1 h_2 = f_1 f_2 - f_1 h_1 + f_1 h_1 - h_1 h_2 \geq f_2(f_1 - h_1) + h_1(f_2 - h_2)$$

推论  $\therefore f$  与  $g$  互素  $\Leftrightarrow \exists u, v \in \mathbb{Z}$  st.  $uf + vg \equiv 1 \pmod{g}$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{① } wf + vg &= 1 \\ \left\{ \begin{array}{l} wf + vg \equiv 1 \pmod{g} \\ vg \equiv 0 \pmod{g} \Rightarrow wf \equiv 1 \pmod{g} \end{array} \right. \end{aligned} \quad \leftarrow \text{来用非证明}$$

同余意义下  $\bar{a}$  为  $f$  逆元，“相乘”为

·推证2  $f_1, \dots, f_n$  与  $g$  互素  $f_1 \cdots f_n$  与  $g$  互素

ie  $\exists u_1, \dots, u_s$  st.  $u_i \tilde{=} i \pmod{q}$

$$\Rightarrow ufix...xusfs \equiv 1 \pmod{g} \Leftrightarrow \underline{uix...xusxfix...xfs} \equiv 1 \pmod{g}$$

利用上牌关系  $\Leftrightarrow Ax \dots x_n$  与  $y$  互素

## 定理10 中国剩余定理 (Chinese Remainder Theorem)

10 中国剩余定理 (Chinese Remainder Theorem)  
 $g_1, \dots, g_s$  两两互素 最简最小化  
 $f_1, \dots, f_s$  为任意多项式 且存在满足所有余式要求  
 的大数  $x$

则存在多项式  $f(x)$  st.  $f(x) \equiv f_i(x) \pmod{g_i}$   $i=1, 2, \dots, s$

证:

或  $h_1(x)$  st.

$$\sum_{i=1}^k h_i(x) \equiv 0 \pmod{q_1} \quad \text{if } j$$

$$h_j(x) \equiv 1 \pmod{q_j}$$

( h; 存在 )

$$y_i(x) = \prod_{j=1}^s g_j(x) \Rightarrow y_i(x)/h_i(x)$$

$$hs \equiv 1 \pmod{g_1}$$

$$\gcd(y_i, q_i) > 1$$

$$\Rightarrow \exists u_i \text{ st. } \underbrace{u_i y_i \equiv 1 \pmod{q_i}}_{\rightarrow b_i}$$

↓ 例 1 ⇒ 做线性组合

$$\therefore h = 15x + 2x(0+3)x^6$$

## 第3 因式分解定理

不可约多项式与数域相关 ( $\alpha - \beta$  最小)  $A, f(x) \in F[x]$

定义 1.  $f(x) \in F[x]$ ,  $\deg(f) \geq 1$ . 如果  $f(x) = f_1(x)f_2(x)$ ,  $\deg(f_1) \geq 1$ ,  $\deg(f_2) \geq 1$   
则称  $f(x)$  为可约多项式, 称  $f(x)$  为不可约多项式 (irreducible)  
否则... 不可约 (irreducible)

(关于不可约多项式的两个简单的性质)

2018.9.12

1)  $p(x)$  在  $F$  上不可约, 则  $\lambda p(x)$  也不可约 ( $\lambda \neq 0$ ,  $\lambda$  为常数)

2)  $f(x), p(x) \in F[x]$ ,  $p(x)$  在  $F$  上不可约:  $p(x) \mid f(x)$  或  $\gcd(f, p) = 1$  两种关系

$\gcd(f, p) = 1$  必然 /  $\gcd(f, p) = d$   $\deg(d) \geq 1$   $\therefore d = \lambda p$   $\lambda \neq 0 \Rightarrow d \mid f \Rightarrow p \mid f$

3)  $f, p, q \in F[x]$ ,  $p(x)$  在  $F$  上不可约, 且  $p \mid fq \Rightarrow p \mid f$  或  $p \mid q$

定理 1 因式分解的唯一性)

设  $f(x) \in F[x]$  为次数  $\geq 1$  的多项式, 则  $f(x)$  可以分解为有限个不可约多项式之积, 且在如下意义下唯一: 即设  $f(x)$  有两个不可约分解

$$f(x) = p_1 \cdots p_s(x) = q_1 \cdots q_t(x) \quad (1) s=t \quad \Rightarrow p_i(x) = g_i q_i(x) \quad (G_i \neq 0)$$

证明: 1) 存在性 对  $n = \deg f$  归纳

(第 n 整归)

$n=1$   $f$  不可约

该结构对  $\deg < n$  的多项式均成立, 见证

$\Rightarrow f(x)$  不可约  $\checkmark$

2)  $f(x)$  可约

$f(x) = f_1(x)f_2(x) \quad \deg f_1 < n \quad \deg f_2 < n$

由归纳假设

$$f(x) = p_1(x) \cdots p_k(x) \quad f(x) = p_{k+1}(x) \cdots p_s(x)$$

$$\Rightarrow f(x) = p_1(x) \cdots p_s(x)$$

#

10月3日

$$f(x) = p_1(x) \cdots p_s(x) = g_1(x) \cdots g_t(x) \quad \swarrow \text{不可约}$$

$$\Rightarrow p_1(x) | g_1(x) \cdots g_t(x) \quad \text{不假设 } p_1 | g_1 \Rightarrow g_1 = c_1 p_1 \quad (c_1 \neq 0)$$

$$\Rightarrow p_2(x) \cdots p_s(x) = c_2 g_2(x) \cdots g_t(x) \quad \dots \text{一直进行} \quad \#$$

$$\therefore g_i(x) = c_i p_i(x) \quad (c_i \neq 0, i=1, 2, \dots, s=t)$$

$$f(x) = p_1(x)^{k_1} p_2(x)^{k_2} \cdots p_s(x)^{k_s} \quad \text{标准形式} \quad k_i > 0$$

$$k_i \text{ 为 } p_i(x) \text{ 的度数} \quad p_i^{k_i}(x) | f(x) \Rightarrow p_i^{k_i+1} | f(x)$$

$$k_i > 0 \quad p_i(x) \text{ 是 } f(x) \text{ 的因子} \quad (p_i(x) \text{ 不可约})$$

判断重因子

$$f(x) = p(x) g(x)$$

$$f'(x) = k p(x)^{k-1} p'(x) g(x) + p(x)^k g'(x) = p(x)^{k-1} [k p'(x) g(x) + p(x) \cdot g'(x)]$$

$$\Rightarrow \gcd(f(x), f'(x)) \neq 1 \quad \Leftrightarrow \text{必要, 反向也成立} \quad \text{有重因子}$$

$\Leftrightarrow \text{Res}(f, f') \neq 0$  结式判别

E.g.

$$\begin{cases} f(x) = p_1(x)^{k_1} \cdots p_s(x)^{k_s} \quad k_s > 0 \\ g(x) = g_1(x)^{l_1} \cdots g_t(x)^{l_t} \quad l_s > 0 \end{cases} \Rightarrow \begin{cases} \gcd(f, g) = p_1(x) \cdots p_s(x) \\ \text{lcm}(f, g) = p_1(x)^{\min(k_1, l_1)} \cdots p_s(x)^{\min(k_s, l_s)} \end{cases}$$

$$\cdot \quad \gcd(f, g) \times \text{lcm}(f, g) = f(x)g(x) = p_1(x)^{k_1} \cdots p_s(x)^{k_s}$$

E.g. 在  $\mathbb{Q}$  上因式分解  $x^{15}-1$

$$x^{15}-1 = (x^5)^3-1 = (x^5-1)(x^{10}+x^5+1) = (x-1)(x^4+x^3+x^2+x+1)(x^{10}+x^5+1)$$

$$= (x^3)^5-1 = (x^3-1)(x^{12}+x^9+x^6+x^3+1) = (x-1)(\underbrace{x^2+x+1}_{(x-1)(x^2+x+1)}) (x^{12}+x^9+x^6+x^3+1)$$

$$= x^{15}-1 = (x-1)(x^{14}+x^{13}+\dots+x+1) = (x-1)(x^2+x+1)(x^8-x^7+x^6-x^5+x^4+\dots)$$

其中求导起主要因子观察作用

Date.

### 3.4 复数域及复数域上的因式分解

$f(x) = 0 \Leftrightarrow x - c \mid f(x)$  求根与因式分解密切相关

定理1  $f(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \dots + a_1 x + a_0 \in F[x]$  令  $f'(c) = 0$  如果  $f(c) = 0$ , 那么  $c$  为  $f(x)$  的根  
如果  $f(c) = f''(c) = \dots = f^{(k)}(c) = 0$ ,  $f^{(k+1)}(c) \neq 0 \Rightarrow c$  为  $f(x)$  的单根

定理1  $c$  为  $f(x)$  的 k 倍根  $\Leftrightarrow (x - c)^k \mid f(x) \quad (x - c)^{k+1} \nmid f(x)$

Taylor 展开从  $f(c) = 0$  点展开 ... 证明略

$$f(x) = \sum_{j=0}^n \frac{f^{(j)}(c)}{j!} (x - c)^j = \sum_{j=k}^n \frac{f^{(j)}(c)}{j!} (x - c)^j := (x - c)^k \left[ \frac{f^{(k)}(c)}{k!} + \frac{f^{(k+1)}(c)}{(k+1)!} (x - c) + \dots \right]$$

定理2  $f(x) \in F[x], \deg f = n$  则  $f$  至多有  $n$  个不同根 与解根判据  
①  $\deg$  性质

② 若有  $n+1$  个不同根  $f(c_i) = 0 \quad (i=0, 1, \dots, n)$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & c_0 & \dots & c_0^n \\ \vdots & & & \vdots \\ 1 & c_n & \dots & c_n^n \end{pmatrix} \left| \begin{pmatrix} a_0 \\ a_1 \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix} \right. = 0 \Rightarrow a_0 = 0 \quad \dots \quad \text{若能算行列式 Review}$$

### 定理3 (代数学基本定理)

$f(x) \in F[x] \quad \deg f = n$  则  $f$  有  $n$  个复根

$$\text{即 } f(x) = a_n(x - c_1)(x - c_2) \dots (x - c_n)$$

$$= a_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \dots + a_1 x + a_0$$

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a_1 \dots a_n = (-1)^n \frac{a_0}{a_n} \\ \dots \end{array} \right.$$

$$\text{Vieta 公式} \quad \sum_{i=1, i \neq j, k \leq n}^{} c_i c_j \dots c_k = (-1)^k \frac{a_{n-k}}{a_n} \rightarrow \sum_{i=1}^n c_i = -\frac{a_{n-1}}{a_n}$$

$$f(x) = (x - c_1)^{n_1} \dots (x - c_s)^{n_s} \quad c_1, \dots, c_s \text{ 互不相同} \quad \sum_{i=1}^s n_i = n$$

「命题」 实系数多项式的复根共轭成对出现

即  $c \in C \quad f(c) = 0 \Rightarrow a_n c^n + a_{n-1} c^{n-1} + \dots + a_0 = 0 \quad (a_n, \dots, a_0 \text{ 为实数})$

$$\text{同取共轭: } a_n \bar{c}^n + a_{n-1} (\bar{c})^{n-1} + \dots + \bar{a}_0 = \underline{f(\bar{c})}$$

共轭互取等式性质

任何实系数多项式可分解为1次或

「命题2」实系数多项式  $p(x)$  不可约 且  $\deg(p) \geq 1$  或 2 2次不可约  $p(x)$  相乘

证明: 1o  $c$  为  $p(x)$  实根  $(x-c) | p(x) \Rightarrow p(x) = \lambda(x-c)$  ( $\lambda \neq 0$ )

2o  $p(x)$  无实根  $\Rightarrow p(x)$  仅有复根  $c$

$$\begin{aligned} \text{又由命题1, 根有 } \bar{c}, c &\Rightarrow (x-c)(x-\bar{c}) | p(x) \Rightarrow p(x) = \lambda((x-a)^2 + b^2) \\ &= (x-a)^2 + b^2 \end{aligned}$$

定理2 实系数多项式有以下不可约分解:

$$f(x) = a_n(x-a_1)^{m_1} \cdots (x-a_r)^{m_r} (x^2 - a_1x + b_1) \cdots (x^2 - a_sx + b_s)$$

$\triangle \Leftrightarrow a_j^2 - 4b_j < 0$

✓ 有复根

$$\text{E.g. } f(x) = (x^4 + x^3 + x^2 + x + 1) = \underbrace{(x^2 + \frac{1}{2}x + 1)^2 - \frac{5}{4}x^2}_{\rightarrow \text{为啥? ? ?}} = (x + \underbrace{\frac{1+\sqrt{5}}{2}}_{\text{有理数域上不可分解}} x + 1)(x + \underbrace{\frac{1-\sqrt{5}}{2}}_{\text{有理数域上不可分解}} x + 1)$$

Date 2018.9.17

## 课堂小测

2.  $f(x)$  满足  $x^2 | f(x)$ ,  $(x+1)^3 | f(x)-1$ ,  $(x-1)^3 | f(x)+1$

$$\Leftrightarrow f(x) \equiv 0 \pmod{x^2}$$

$$\begin{cases} f(x) \equiv 1 \pmod{(x+1)^3} \\ f(x) \equiv -1 \pmod{(x-1)^3} \end{cases}$$

构造  $f_2(x), f_3(x)$

$$\begin{cases} f_2(x) \equiv 0 \\ f_3(x) \equiv 1 \end{cases}$$

$$f_3(x) \equiv 0$$

$$f_3(x) \equiv 0$$

$$f_3(x) \equiv 1$$

$$\therefore f_2(x) = x^2(x-3)^2 g_2(x)$$

$$(x+1)^3 | x^2(x-3)^2 g_2(x) - 1 = f_2(x) - 1$$

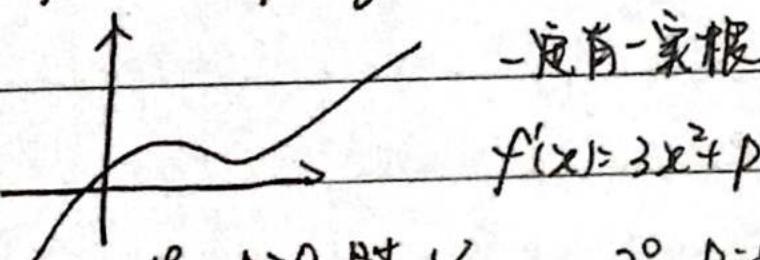
$$\Leftrightarrow f_2(-1) - 1 = 0 \quad f_2'(-1) = 0 \quad f_2''(-1) = 0 \Leftrightarrow g_2(-1) \quad g_2'(-1) \quad g_2''(-1)$$

写出  $g_2(x)$

中值定理

$\Rightarrow$  一定存在

3.  $f(x) = x^3 + px + q$



$$f'(x) = 3x^2 + p$$

$$1^\circ p > 0 \text{ 时 } \vee$$

$$2^\circ p > 0 \quad q \neq 0$$

$$3^\circ p < 0 \quad x = \pm \sqrt{-\frac{p}{3}}$$

$$\text{极大 } -\sqrt{\frac{p}{3}}$$

$$\text{极小 } +\sqrt{\frac{p}{3}}$$

$$f(-\sqrt{\frac{p}{3}}) = \frac{p}{3} \sqrt{\frac{p}{3}} - p \sqrt{\frac{p}{3}} + q$$

$$f(\sqrt{\frac{p}{3}}) = -\frac{p}{3} \sqrt{\frac{p}{3}} + p \sqrt{\frac{p}{3}}$$

$$f(-\sqrt{\frac{p}{3}}) f(\sqrt{\frac{p}{3}}) > 0 \Leftrightarrow \underbrace{(\frac{p}{3})^3 + (\frac{q}{3})^2}_{> 0} > 0$$

因式分解

$$\text{fix } \in \mathbb{C}(x) \quad f(x) = a_n(x-a_1)^{n_1} \cdots (x-a_s)^{n_s}$$

$$\text{fix } \in \mathbb{R}(x) \quad f(x) = a_n(x-a_1)^{n_1} \cdots (x-a_r)^{n_r} (x^2 - a_i x + b_i) \cdots (a_i^2 - 4b_i)$$

例2 在  $\mathbb{R}, \mathbb{C}$  上分别分解  $x^n - 1$

$$x^n - 1 = (x-1)(x^{n-1} + x^{n-2} + \dots + x + 1)$$

$$x^n - 1 \text{ 复数的三角表示} \quad x = r(\cos \theta + i \sin \theta) = r e^{i\theta} \Rightarrow \frac{r^n e^{in\theta}}{1} = 1$$

$$\therefore x = e^{i\theta} \Leftrightarrow \cos n\theta + i \sin n\theta = 1$$

$$\therefore \cos n\theta = 1 \quad n\theta = 2k\pi \quad (k \in \mathbb{Z}) \Rightarrow \theta = \frac{2k\pi}{n} \quad (k=0, \dots, n-1)$$

$$\therefore x_k = e^{i\frac{2k\pi}{n}} = \cos \frac{2k\pi}{n} + i \sin \frac{2k\pi}{n} \quad (k=0, 1, \dots, n-1) = w_k \leftarrow \text{上方程的复根表示}$$

$$x^n - 1 =$$

$$\Phi: (x-w_0)(x-w_1) \cdots (x-w_{n-1})$$

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} w_0 + w_1 + \dots + w_{n-1} = 0 \quad \text{12 阶对称, 高阶零点} \\ w_1 + w_2 + w_{n-2} + w_{n-1} = -1 \end{array} \right.$$

$$\therefore \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \cos \frac{2k\pi}{n} = -1 \quad \sum_{k=1}^{n-1} \sin \frac{2k\pi}{n} = 0 \quad w_k = \sqrt[n]{n} e^{i\frac{2k\pi}{n}} \quad \text{分奇偶讨论配对情况}$$

(n=2m, w\_m=-1)

$$n=2m, w_m=-1$$

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} x^n - 1 = (x-1)(x+1) \prod_{k=1}^{m-1} (x^2 - 2 \cos \frac{2k\pi}{n} x + 1) \quad ((-w_k)(1-w_{n-k})) = (x^2 - 2 \cos \frac{2k\pi}{n} x + 1) \\ n=2m+1 \end{array} \right.$$

$$x^n - 1 = (x-1) \prod_{k=1}^m (x^2 - 2 \cos \frac{2k\pi}{n} x + 1)$$

例3: 求  $\prod_{k=1}^m \sin \frac{k\pi}{n}$

$$n=2m+1 \quad \prod_{k=1}^m (x^2 - 2 \cos \frac{2k\pi}{n} x + 1) = \frac{x^n - 1}{x-1} = x^{n-1} + \dots + x + 1$$

$$\text{令 } x=1 \quad \prod_{k=1}^m 2(1 - \cos \frac{2k\pi}{n}) = \prod_{k=1}^m 4 \sin^2 \frac{k\pi}{n} = n \Rightarrow \boxed{\prod_{k=1}^m \sin^2 \frac{k\pi}{n} = \frac{n}{4^m} = \frac{n}{2^m}}$$

$$x \sin \frac{k\pi}{n} = \sin \frac{(n-k)\pi}{n}$$

$$(x+1)^n + (x-1)^n = \text{因式分解} \Rightarrow (x+1)^n + (x-1)^n = 0 \Rightarrow \left(\frac{x+1}{x-1}\right)^n = -1$$

## 3.5 有理系数多项式的因式分解

$$f(x) = a_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \dots + a_1 x + a_0 \in \mathbb{Q}[x]$$

$$= \frac{d}{dx} g(x) \quad g(x) \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$$

系数非1 提前

⇒ 转化为讨论整系数多项式分解

• 定义1  $g(x) = a_n x^n + \dots + a_1 x + a_0 \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$  且  $\gcd(a_n, \dots, a_1, a_0) = 1$

称  $g(x)$  为本原多项式 (primitive polynomial)

### Gauss 引理

两个本原多项式乘积也是本原多项式

$$\text{证: } f(x) = a_n x^n + \dots + a_1 x + a_0 \in \mathbb{Z}[x] \quad \text{为本原多项式}$$

$$g(x) = b_n x^n + \dots + b_1 x + b_0 \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$$

$$f(x)g(x) = c_{n+m} x^{n+m} + \dots + c_1 x + c_0 \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$$

$$c_k = \sum_{i+j=k} a_i b_j \quad \text{要证 } \gcd(c_0, c_1, \dots, c_{n+m}) = 1$$

(反证)

$$\gcd(c_0, c_1, \dots, c_{n+m}) = d > 1 \quad \text{取 } d \text{ 的素因子 } p$$

$$p | a_0, p | a_1, \dots, p | a_m, p \nmid a_i$$

$$p \nmid b_0, p \nmid b_1, \dots, p \nmid b_{j-1}, p \nmid b_j$$

$$p | c_{i+j} = a_0 b_{i+j} + a_1 b_{i+j-1} + \dots + \underbrace{a_i b_j}_{\in p} + \dots + a_{i+j} b_0$$

故不存在该素因子  $p$

推论1  $f(x), g(x) \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$   $g(x)$  为本原多项式 且  $g(x) \mid f(x)$  则  $g(x) = \frac{f(x)}{g(x)} \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$

且若  $f(x)$  也为本原, 则  $g(x)$  也为本原多项式

证:  $g(x) \cdot \frac{1}{s} h(x) \quad h(x) - \text{本原} \quad \Rightarrow \gcd(r, s) = 1$

$$f(x) = g(x) \cdot g(x) = \frac{1}{s} h(x) \cdot g(x) \quad \text{本原} \in \mathbb{Z}[x] \quad \stackrel{\text{二进制}}{\Rightarrow} \frac{1}{s} \mid f(x) \cdot h(x)$$

牙幼  $\Leftrightarrow$  牙幼

定理1  $f(x) \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$  在  $\mathbb{Z}$  不可约  $\Leftrightarrow f(x)$  在  $\mathbb{Q}$  上不可约

证:  $f(x)$  在  $\mathbb{Z}$  上可约  $\Rightarrow f(x)$  在  $\mathbb{Q}$  上可约

$f(x)$  在  $\mathbb{Q}$  上可约  $\Rightarrow f(x) = f_1(x)f_2(x)$   $f_1, f_2 \in (\mathbb{Q}[x])$   $a_1, a_2 \in \mathbb{Q}$

由推论1:  $a_1, a_2 \in \mathbb{Z}$   $= a_1g_1(x)g_2(x) = (a_1g_1(x))g_2(x)$   $a_1, g_1 \in \mathbb{Z}$  有理

$\Rightarrow f(x)$  在  $\mathbb{Z}$  可约

定理2  $f(x) \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$  则  $f(x)$  可唯一分解为

$f(x) = a_0f_1(x) \dots f_s(x)$   $a_0 \in \mathbb{Z}$ ,  $f_i(x)$  为不可约的本原多项式

证  $f(x) = \tilde{a}_0\tilde{f}_1(\tilde{x}) \dots \tilde{f}_s(\tilde{x})$  有理上分解  $\tilde{a}_0 \in \mathbb{Q}$   $\tilde{f}_i \in \mathbb{Q}$

$$= \tilde{a}_0 \tilde{c}_1 \dots \tilde{c}_s f_1(x) \dots f_s(x) \quad f_i(x) = G_i f_i^*(x)$$

$\tilde{a}_0 \in \mathbb{Z}$

有理根定理

( $t|x-s$ )

定理3  $f(x) = a_nx^n + \dots + a_0 \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$  设  $f(x)$  有有理根  $C \neq 0$  ( $\gcd(s,t)=1$ )

$$t|a_n, s|a_0$$

$$a_n\left(\frac{s}{t}\right)^n + \dots + a_1\left(\frac{s}{t}\right) + a_0 = 0 \Leftrightarrow a_ns^n + a_{n-1}s^{n-1}t + \dots + a_0t^n = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow s|a_0t^n \quad \gcd(s,t)=1 \Rightarrow s|a_0, t|a_0s^n \Rightarrow t|a_n$$

P263

78911

No.

Date.

清华徐善华 张华利  
线性代数

2013.9.19

周一回顾。

1.  $f(x) \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$   $f(x)$  在  $\mathbb{Z}$  上可约  $\Leftrightarrow f(x)$  在  $\mathbb{Q}$  上不可约
2.  $f(x) \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$   $f(x) = a_0 g_1(x) \cdots g_s(x)$   $a_0 \in \mathbb{Z}$ ,  $g_1, \dots, g_s$  为不可约本原多项式
3.  $f(x) = a_n x^n + \dots + a_0$  有有理根  $c \geq \frac{1}{n}$  ( $\text{gcd}(c, n) = 1$ ) ( $f(x)$  有一-次因式  $s|x - t \Rightarrow s|a_n, t|a_0$ )  
综上结论：找一次因子

Ex. 1  $f(x) = 6x^3 - 11x^2 - 4x + 4$  在  $\mathbb{Z}$  上做因式分解

 $s|6, t|4$  $s = \{1, 2, 3, 6\}$ 

依次找

 $t = \{\pm 1, \pm 2, \pm 4\}$ 

$$\Rightarrow f(x) = (x-2)(6x^2+2x-2) = (x-2)(2x-1)(3x+2)$$

Ex. 2  $f(x) = 8x^3 - 6x + 1$  (1)  $f(x)$  最高可约  $x$

\* 有 1  $\deg f_1 = 1$   $\deg f_2 = 2$  又无一次因子 1 简直

(变：令  $y=2x$ ,  $g_1(y) = y^3 - 3y + 1$  .. 简化首项  $\neq 0$ )

问： $\cos 20^\circ$  为有理数还是无理数？

$$\begin{aligned} \frac{1}{2} &= \cos 60^\circ = 4\cos^3 20^\circ - 3\cos 20^\circ \quad \text{令 } \cos 20^\circ = x \\ \frac{1}{2} &= 4x^3 - 3x \end{aligned}$$

$\Rightarrow$  不可约 (3 次  $\mathbb{Q}$ )  $\Rightarrow$  有理有理数  $\Rightarrow \cos 20^\circ$  为无理数

定理 4 Eisenstein 判别法)

设  $f(x) = a_n x^n + \dots + a_1 x + a_0 \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$  如果存在  $p$  满足 (素数  $p$ !!!)

(1)  $\cdots p \nmid a_n$ , (2)  $p \mid a_i$  ( $i=0, 1, \dots, n-1$ ) (3)  $p^2 \nmid a_0$

$\Rightarrow f(x)$  不可约

PS：无通用法则区分可约 vs 不可约；单独判定

证：(反证) 设  $f(x)$  可约，即存在  $g(x), h(x) \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$  s.t.  $f(x) = g(x)h(x)$

利用商余大胆猜测：

$$(f(x) = g(x)h(x)) \bmod p \quad a_i^s \equiv r_i \bmod p \quad (0 \dots p-1)$$

$$f(x) \bmod p = r_n x^n + 0 + \dots + 0 \equiv r_n x^n \quad - A, B \equiv \frac{\text{haw}}{\text{mod}}$$
$$\equiv g(x)h(x) \bmod p \quad (g(x) = g(x) \bmod p \dots)$$

$$g(x) = b_n x^n + \dots + b_s x^s \not\equiv b_s \quad \text{第 } s \text{ 次}$$

$$h(x) = c_k x^k + \dots + c_t x^t \not\equiv c_k \quad \text{再模}$$

$$\therefore g(x)h(x) = b_n c_k x^{n+k} + \dots + b_s c_t x^{s+t} \equiv r_n x^n \pmod{p}$$
$$\Rightarrow g(x) = b_n x^n, \quad h(x) = c_k x^k$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{cases} g(x) = p g_0(x) + b_n x^n & \text{把常数项单独弄出来} \\ h(x) = p h_0(x) + c_k x^k & \swarrow \end{cases}$$

$$f(x) = g(x)h(x) = p^2 g_0 h_0 + p b_n x^m h_0 + p c_k x^k g_0 + b_n c_k x^{k+m}$$

又  $p^2 \nmid a_0$  矛盾

非互能判断反例：

Ex. 3 证  $f(x)$  在之上不可约

$$\text{III } f(x) = x^n + 2 \quad \text{Eisenstein} \quad p > 2 \quad \times$$

$$\Rightarrow f(x) = x^{p-1} + \dots + x + 1 \quad \text{取不到素数} \quad \text{把常数项去掉}$$

$$\text{令 } x = y+1 \quad g(y) = f(y+1) = \frac{(y+1)^{p-1}}{(y+1)} = y^{p-1} + C_p' y^{p-2} + \dots + C_{p-2} y + C_p^p$$

$(p \text{ 素数, 则 } p | C_p^k \quad 1 \leq k \leq p-1)$

$\Rightarrow g$  不可约  $\Rightarrow f$  不可约

"分圆多项式" Search

✓ 本来有理域有  $n$  个根  
减常数就破坏了  
1 次 - 3 次数关系

$$(3) \quad f(x) = (x-a_1) \cdots (x-a_n) - 1 \quad \text{这里 } a_i \in \mathbb{Z}, n \geq 2$$

$f(a_i) = -1$  该  $f(x) = h(x)g(x)$  可约

$\Rightarrow g(a_i)h(a_i) = -1$  i.e. 只有  $g(a_i) = 1, h(a_i) = -1$

$\sum_i g_i(a_i) + h(a_i) = 0 \quad (i=1, 2, \dots, n)$   $\xrightarrow{\text{deg } g+h}$   
 $\Rightarrow a_i \dots \xrightarrow{\text{deg } g_i(x) + \text{deg } h(x) \leq n}$   $\xrightarrow{\text{deg } g+h < n}$   $\xleftarrow{\text{矛盾}}$   
 $\Rightarrow$  不可能  $h(x) = -g_i(x) \Rightarrow f(x) = -(g_i(x))^2 \leq 0$   
 $\xrightarrow{\text{f}(x) \text{ 高项系数为 } +1} \text{f}(x) \rightarrow +\infty \text{ 矛盾} \quad \times$

## B6 多元多项式 (multivariate polynomials)

定义 1  $\mathbb{F}$  为数域,  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$  为变量, 称  $a_{k_1 \dots k_n} x^{k_1} \dots x^{k_n}$  为一个单项式 (monomial)  
 $a_{k_1 \dots k_n}$  为单项式系数 (coefficient),  $k_1 + \dots + k_n$  称为多项式的次数 (degree)  
 多项式为有限个单项式的和, 多项式次数定义为其中单项式次数最大值  
 并称多项式 (homogeneous)

$$\mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}^n = \{(k_1, \dots, k_n) \mid k_i \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}\}$$

$$x = (x_1, \dots, x_n) \quad \alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}^n : \alpha_0 x^0, \alpha_1 x^1, \dots, x_n^{\alpha_n} \quad \alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}^n$$

$\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}^n$  有限指称集  $f(x) = \sum_{\alpha \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}^n} \alpha_i x^i$

定义 2 (字典序)  $\alpha, \beta \in \mathbb{Z}_{\geq 0}^n \Rightarrow \text{lex } \alpha \Leftrightarrow (\text{lexicographical})$   
 $\alpha, \beta$  的最左边的第一个非 0 分量为正

$$x^3y^3 \succ_{\text{lex}} x^2y^4 \quad (3, 3, 1) \succ (2, 4, 6)$$

定义 3 (分级字典序)  $\alpha >_{\text{grlex}} \beta \Leftrightarrow |\alpha| > |\beta|$   
 或  $|\alpha| = |\beta| \wedge \alpha >_{\text{lex}} \beta$

$\mathbb{F}[x_1, \dots, x_n]$  多元多项式环  
 加、减、乘

定义3  $f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$  中按某一序排列最高的多项式

$$LT(f) = LM(f) \times LC(f)$$

term monomial coefficient

$x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$  &  $f(x)$  的根

$$\begin{aligned} f(x) &= (x-x_1)(x-x_2)\dots(x-x_n) = x^n + \underline{a_1 x^{n-1}} + \dots + a_{n-1} x + a_n \\ &= x^n - \underline{a_1 x^{n-1}} + a_2 x^{n-2} + \dots + (-1)^n a_n \quad (\text{因为本身正负}) \end{aligned}$$

$$G_1 = x_1 + x_2 + \dots + x_n$$

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} G_2 = x_1 x_2 + x_1 x_3 + \dots + x_{n-1} x_n \\ \vdots \\ G_n = x_1 x_2 \dots x_n \end{array} \right.$$

$G_1, G_2, \dots, G_n$  &  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$  的基本对称多项式

定义4 设  $f(x_1, \dots, x_n) \in F[x_1, \dots, x_n]$  如果对  $1, 2, \dots, n$  的任一排序  $i_1, i_2, \dots, i_n$  都有

$$f(x_{i_1}, x_{i_2}, \dots, x_{i_n}) = f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n)$$

则称  $f$  为对称多项式

$$g(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) \in F[x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n] \quad \swarrow \text{反向表示性质} \rightarrow \text{表象}$$

$$F = f(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = g(G_1, G_2, \dots, G_n) \quad \text{可以此表示, 且后者对称}$$

定理1 设  $f(x_1, \dots, x_n) \in F[x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n]$  为对称多项式, 则存在唯一多项式  $g(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) \in F[-]$  满足  $f(x_1, \dots, x_n) = g(G_1, \dots, G_n)$

证明: 1. 存在性) 用数学归纳法

$$LT(f) = a_k x^k \quad (k_1 \geq k_2 \geq \dots \geq k_n) \quad k = (k_1, k_2, \dots, k_n)$$

$$g(G_1, G_2, \dots, G_n) = a_k G_1^{k_1-k_2} G_2^{k_2-k_3} \dots G_n^{k_n-k_1} \left( \prod_{i=1}^n G_i \right)^{k_n} \quad \leftarrow G_i \text{ 仅先者为单纯未知数}$$

$$LT(g) = a_k x_1^{k_1-k_2} (x_1 x_2)^{k_2-k_3} \dots (x_1 x_2 \dots x_{n-1})^{k_{n-1}-k_n} (x_1 \dots x_n)^{k_n}$$

首项分析

$$\text{令 } f(x_1, \dots, x_n) - f(x_1, \dots, x_n) = g_1(g_1, g_2, \dots, g_n) \quad \checkmark \text{ 单身又对称}$$

$$\text{找 } g_2(g_1, \dots, g_n) \text{ st. } LT(f_i) = LT(g_1(g_1, \dots, g_n))$$

... 以此操作 有限项 +

$$f = g_1(g_1, \dots, g_n) + \dots + g_n(g_1, \dots, g_n)$$

唯一性)

$$f = g_1(g_1, \dots, g_n) = h_1(g_1, \dots, g_n) \Rightarrow g = h$$

$$LT(f) = LT(g_1(g_1, \dots, g_n)) = LT(h_1(g_1, \dots, g_n)) \Rightarrow LT(g) = LT(h)$$

Exq1 设  $x_1, x_2, x_3$  为  $x^3 + px + q$  的三根, 求以  $x_1^2, x_2^2, x_3^2$  为根的三次多项式

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} g_1 = x_1 + x_2 + x_3 = 0 \\ g_2 = x_1x_2 + x_2x_3 + x_3x_1 = p \\ g_3 = x_1x_2x_3 = -q \end{array} \right. \quad \left\{ \begin{array}{l} g'_1 = x_1^2 + x_2^2 + x_3^2 = -2p \\ g'_2 = x_1^2x_2^2 + \dots = (x_1 + x_2 + x_3)^2 - 2(x_1x_2 + x_2x_3 + x_3x_1) \\ g'_3 = x_1^2x_2^2x_3^2 = q^2 \end{array} \right.$$

Exq2  $p, q$  为实数, 求  $x^3 + px + q$  有三个实根的条件 D 复数性质

$$\text{设计判别式 } D = (x_1 - x_2)^2(x_2 - x_3)^2(x_3 - x_1)^2 \text{ 很多}$$

设  $x_1$  为实根

$$(1) x_2, x_3 \in \mathbb{R} \quad D \geq 0$$

利用复数平方 < 0 及对称性

$$(2) x_2, x_3 \in \mathbb{C}/\mathbb{R} \quad x_2, x_3 = a \pm bi \quad (b \neq 0)$$

$$D = (x - a - bi)^2(x - a + bi)^2(-4b^2) < 0 \quad = ((x - a)^2 + b^2)(-4b^2) < 0$$

$$D = -((\frac{p}{3})^3 + (\frac{q}{2})^2) \quad x^2 \text{ 方程 解析 vs. 代数 } \text{ Itera 16 位数}$$

$$x^3 + y^3 + z^3 - 3xyz = (x+y+z)(x^2 + y^2 + z^2 - xy - xz - yz)$$

$$s_k = x^k + y^k + z^k + \dots$$

$$s_1, s_2, \dots, s_n \leftrightarrow g_1, g_2, \dots, g_n \text{ 互逆推导}$$

### 定理3 (Newton 惟等式)

$$k \leq n: S_k - 6_1 S_{k-1} + 6_2 S_{k-2} + \dots + (-1)^k 6_k = 0$$

$$k > n: S_k - 6_1 S_{k-1} + 6_2 S_{k-2} + \dots + (-1)^n 6_n S_{k-n} = 0$$

P283 345

2018.10.8

### 小测讲解

$$1. f(x) = 1 + x + \frac{x^2}{2!} + \dots + \frac{x^n}{n!} \text{ 无重根}$$

$$\Leftrightarrow f(x), f'(x) \text{ 有(无)公共根 } f'(x) = 1 + x + \dots + \frac{x^{n-1}}{(n-1)!}$$

$$x=a \text{ 为公共根, } \Rightarrow f(a)=0, f'(a)=0 \Rightarrow \frac{a^n}{n!}=0 \Rightarrow a=0$$

$\Rightarrow f(a) \neq 0$  矛盾

$$2. (1) x^2+x+1 \mid x^{3p} + x^{3n+1} + x^{3m+2}$$

$$\text{法: 由模的性质 } x^3 \equiv 1 \pmod{(x^2+x+1)} \Rightarrow f(x) \equiv x^2+x+1 \pmod{\dots}$$

$$x^{3m} \equiv 1 \pmod{\dots} \quad f(x) \equiv 0 \pmod{\dots}$$

$$x^{3n+1} \equiv x \pmod{\dots}$$

证:

$$x^2+x+1 \mid x^{3m} - x^{3n+1} + x^{3p+2} \quad m, n, p \in \mathbb{Z}_+ \quad \text{条件成立} \Leftrightarrow m, n, p \text{ 同奇偶}$$

$$\text{证: 由 } x^3+1 = (x+1)(x^2-x+1) \quad w_1, w_2 \text{ 为 } x^2-x+1 \text{ 两根}$$

$$\begin{cases} g(w_1) = (-1)^m - (-1)^n w_1 + (-1)^p w_1^2 = 0 \\ g(w_2) = (-1)^m - (-1)^n w_2 + (-1)^p w_2^2 = 0 \end{cases}$$

$$\Downarrow 2(-1)^m - (-1)^n - (-1)^p = 0$$

$$\text{let } \begin{cases} w_1, w_2 = 1 \\ w_1 + w_2 = 1 \end{cases}$$

$$\begin{cases} w_1^2 + w_2^2 = -1 \\ w_1^2 + w_2^2 = -1 \end{cases}$$

分析奇偶即可

( $\Leftarrow$ )

$$\text{分析 若 } \begin{cases} g(w_1) = 0 \\ g(w_2) = 0 \end{cases} \Rightarrow (x-w_1) \mid g(x) \Rightarrow (x-w_1)(x-w_2) \mid g(x)$$

$$g(101) = (-1)^m - (-1)^n w_1 + (-1)^p w_1^2 \quad \text{向奇偶} \Rightarrow 1 - w_1 + w_1^2 = 0$$

102 同理，综上即证

法一：  
 $f(x) = x^3 - x^2 - 2x + 1 \quad g(x) = x^2 - 2$   
 $\alpha, \beta, \gamma$  为  $f(x)$  的根，求以  $g(\alpha), g(\beta), g(\gamma)$  为根的三次方程  
 $g(\alpha) = \alpha^2 - 2 \quad g(\beta) = \beta^2 - 2 \quad g(\gamma) = \gamma^2 - 2$

$$f(x) = (x-1)g(x)-1$$

$$\begin{cases} f(\alpha) = (\alpha-1)g(\alpha)-1 = 0 \Rightarrow g(\alpha) = \frac{1}{\alpha-1} \\ f(\beta) = (\beta-1)g(\beta)-1 = 0 \Rightarrow g(\beta) = \frac{1}{\beta-1} \\ f(\gamma) = (\gamma-1)g(\gamma)-1 = 0 \Rightarrow g(\gamma) = \frac{1}{\gamma-1} \end{cases}$$

$$\therefore x = \frac{1}{2} \quad \boxed{\alpha = \frac{1}{x} + 1} \quad \text{倒过来}$$

$$f(\frac{1}{2}+1) = f(2) = 0 \Rightarrow x^3(\frac{1}{2}+1) \text{ 满足题意}$$

法二：Vieta 定理

$$3. x^{2n} + x^n + 1 > (x^n)^2 + x^n + 1$$

$$\text{共轭关系: } e^{i\theta} = e^{i(\pi-\theta)}$$

$$\therefore (x^n)^3 - 1 = (x^n - 1)(x^n)^2 + x^n + 1$$

$$\Rightarrow x^{3n} - 1 \Rightarrow \omega_k = e^{i\frac{2k\pi}{3n}} \quad 1 \leq k \leq 3n$$

$$3^{3n} - 1 = \prod_{i=1}^{3n} (x - \omega_i)$$

$$x^n - 1 = \prod_{k=0}^{n-1} (x - \omega_{3k+1}) \quad \omega_k^n = 1 \quad k=3t \quad (\text{幅角值分割})$$

$$\therefore \Rightarrow x^{2n} + x^n + 1 = \prod_{j=0}^{n-1} \underbrace{(x - \overline{\omega_{3j+1}})}_{\text{恰好可组成共轭对}} (x - \overline{\omega_{3j+2}})$$

$$\overline{\omega_{3j+1}} = e^{i\frac{2(3j+1)\pi}{3n}}$$

$$\overline{\omega_{3j+2}} = e^{i[2\pi - \frac{2(3j+1)\pi}{3n}]} = e^{i\frac{6n-6j-2\pi}{3n}} \Rightarrow e^{i\frac{6(n-t-1)+4}{3n}\pi}$$

$$(x - \overline{\omega_{3j+1}})(x - \overline{\omega_{3j+2}}) = x^2 - (2\cos \frac{6t+2}{3n}\pi)x + 1$$

$$\therefore x^{2n} + x^n + 1 = \prod_{t=0}^{n-1} (x - \overline{\omega_{3t+1}})(x - \overline{\omega_{3t+2}}) > \prod_{t=0}^{n-1} (x^2 - (2\cos \frac{6t+2}{3n}\pi)x + 1)$$

6'  $f(x) \in \mathbb{Z}[x]$ ,  $g(y) = y^n f(\frac{1}{y})$   $n = \deg f$

$\hat{f}^n g$  在  $(0, \infty)$  上不可微且相间  $f(x) \underset{x=y}{\sim} f(\frac{1}{y})y^n$

e.g.  $2x^3 + 6x^2 + 8x + 1 \Rightarrow$  恒成立, 由 Einstein 判别  
 $y^3 + 2y^2 + 6y + 1$

7.  $x^n = C_m^0 x^{m-1} + C_m^1 x^{m-2} + \dots + (-1)^m C_m^{2m}$

证: 令  $x = y^2$ ,  $f(y) = 0 = y^{2m} C_m^0 y^{2m-2} + \dots + (-1)^m C_m^{2m}$

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} (y+i)^{2m} = \sum_{j=0}^{2m} C_m^j (y^{2m-j})^j \\ (y-i)^{2m} = \sum_{j=0}^{2m} C_m^j y^{2m-j} (y^j)^j (-1)^j \end{array} \right. \quad \leftarrow \text{取} \pm \text{保证} + - \text{交错}$$

$$\therefore 2f(y) = (y+i)^{2m} + (y-i)^{2m} \quad \text{又由 } (x+1)^n + (x-1)^n \text{ 共性}$$

$$\therefore \left( \frac{y+i}{y-i} \right)^{2m} = -1 \quad \frac{y+i}{y-i} = e^{j \frac{2k\pi - \pi}{2m}} = w_k \quad (1 \leq k \leq 2m)$$

$$\therefore y = e^{j \frac{1+kw}{1-wk}} = e^{j \frac{(1+kw)(1-wk)}{1-wk^2}} = \frac{\cos \frac{-\pi + 2k\pi}{2m}}{\sin \frac{-\pi + 2k\pi}{2m}} = -\cot \left( \frac{-\pi + 2k\pi}{2m} \right)$$

$$= \cot \left( \pi - \frac{-\pi + 2k\pi}{2m} \right) = \cot \left( \frac{2(m-k)+1}{2m}\pi \right)$$

又相反数  $\pi - \theta = \theta$

找到相反数

date: 2018.10.10 补充习题课

$$1. (1) \cos \frac{\pi}{2n+1} \cos \frac{2\pi}{2n+1} \cdots \cos \frac{n\pi}{2n+1} = \frac{1}{2^n}$$

$$(2) \sin \frac{\pi}{2n} = \sin \frac{2\pi}{2n} \cdots \sin \frac{n\pi}{2n} = \frac{n\pi}{2^{n+1}}$$

$$\text{解: (1)} x^{2n+1} - 1 = (x-1) \prod_{k=1}^n (x^2 - 2x \cos \frac{2k\pi}{2n+1} + 1)$$

$$x=1$$

$$\therefore -2 = -2 \prod_{k=1}^n 2(1 + \cos \frac{2k\pi}{2n+1}) = (-2) \prod_{k=1}^n 2 \cos \frac{k\pi}{2n+1}$$

$$\prod_{k=1}^n \cos \frac{2k\pi}{2n+1} = \frac{1}{2^n}$$

$$(2) x^{2n} - 1 = (x-1) \prod_{k=1}^{n-1} (x^2 - 2x \cos \frac{k\pi}{n} + 1)$$

$$\prod_{k=1}^{n-1} (2 - 2 \cos \frac{k\pi}{n}) = \prod_{k=1}^{n-1} 2 \cdot 2 \sin \frac{k\pi}{n} = n$$

$$2. a, b, c \text{ 都为正数} \Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} a+b+c > 0 \\ ab+bc+ca > 0 \\ abc > 0 \end{cases}$$

$$f: (x-a)(x-b)(x-c) = f(x)$$

$$= x^3 - (a+b+c)x^2 + (ab+bc+ca)x - abc \quad x \leq 0 \quad f(x) \leq 0 \Rightarrow \text{成立}$$

$$3. \cos \frac{\pi}{7} - \cos \frac{2\pi}{7} + \cos \frac{3\pi}{7} = \frac{1}{2}$$

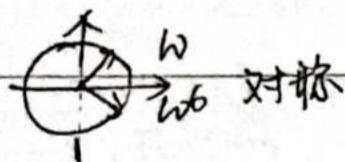
$$w = \cos \frac{\pi}{7} + i \sin \frac{\pi}{7}$$

$$w^7 = \cos 7\pi + i \sin 7\pi = -1$$

$$\therefore w^7 + 1 = 0$$

$$x^7 + (-1)(x+1)(x^6 - x^5 + x^4 - x^3 + x^2 - x + 1)$$

$$\therefore 1 - w + w^2 - w^3 + w^4 - w^5 + w^6 = 0 \quad \bar{w} + w = 2 \cos \frac{\pi}{7}$$



$$\underbrace{w^k \cdot w^{7-k}}_{=1} = -1 \quad w^{7-k} = -w^k$$

$$1 - (w + w^{-1}) + (w^2 + w^{-2}) - (w^3 + w^{-3}) = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow 1 - 2 \cos \frac{\pi}{7} + 2 \cos \frac{2\pi}{7} - 2 \cos \frac{3\pi}{7} = 0$$

4.  $a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n$  未证:

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a_1 x_1 + a_2 x_2 + \dots + a_n = a_1^n \\ a_2 x_1 + a_3 x_2 + \dots + a_n = a_2^n \end{array} \right. \quad \text{有唯一解 且得解}$$

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} a_1 x_1 + a_2 x_2 + \dots + a_n = a_1^n \\ a_2 x_1 + a_3 x_2 + \dots + a_n = a_2^n \end{array} \right.$$

$$a_n x_1 + \dots + a_n = a_n^n$$

$$\text{法一: } \left| \begin{array}{cc} a_1^n & x_1 \\ a_2^n & x_2 \\ \vdots & \vdots \\ a_n^n & x_n \end{array} \right| = \begin{vmatrix} a_1^n \\ a_2^n \\ \vdots \\ a_n^n \end{vmatrix} \quad \text{范德蒙德行列式}.$$

$$\text{det} = \prod_{i < j} (a_i^n - a_j^n) \neq 0$$

$$\text{法二: } \text{易知 } a_1^n + x_1 a_1^{n-1} + \dots + x_{n-1} a_1 + x_n = 0 \quad i=1, 2, \dots, n$$

$$f(x) = x^n + x_1 x^{n-1} + \dots + x_{n-1} x + x_n \quad f(0) = 0$$

$$f(x) = (x-a_1)(x-a_2) \cdots (x-a_n) = x^n - G_1 x^{n-1} + G_2 x^{n-2} + \dots + (-1)^n G_n$$

$$\therefore G_k = \sum_{i_1, \dots, i_k} a_{i_1} \mid (x_{i_1}, x_{i_2}, \dots, x_{i_k}) = (-1)^k G_k, \dots, (-1)^n G_n$$

$$\therefore a, b \text{ 为方程 } x^4 x^3 - 1 = 0 \text{ 的 2 个根}$$

$$ab \text{ 为 } x^6 + x^4 + x^3 - x^2 - 1 = 0 \text{ 的根} \quad (\Rightarrow C_4^2 = 6)$$

$$\text{Sol 1: } f(x) = (x-a)(x-b)(x-c)(x-d)$$

$$\text{则有: } a+b+c+d = -1 = abcd \Rightarrow \boxed{ab = -\frac{1}{cd}}$$

$$\therefore ab = 0 \quad \therefore a^4 + a^3 - 1 = 0 \Rightarrow \begin{cases} a^3(1+a) = 1 \\ b^3(1+b) = 1 \end{cases} \Rightarrow (ab)^3(1+a)(1+b) = 1$$

$$\therefore \boxed{(ab)^3(1+a)(1+b)(1+c)(1+d) = (1+c)(1+d)}$$

$$(1-a)(1-b)(1-c)(1-d) = f(1) = 1$$

$$\boxed{(1+c)(1+d) = -(ab)^3}$$

$$(1+a)(1+b) = -(cd)^3$$

$$\therefore -(ab)^3 - (cd)^3 = 2 + (a+b+c+d) + (ab+cd) = \boxed{1+ab+cd}$$

$$\text{由 } 2 \times \square \quad -(ab)^3 + (\frac{1}{ab})^3 = 1 + ab - \frac{1}{ab} \quad \therefore (ab)^6 + (ab)^4 + (ab)^3 - (ab)^2 - 1 = 0$$

算多根式

$$\text{Sol 2: } G_1 = a+b+c+d = -1$$

$$g(x) = (x-ab)(x-ac)(x-ad) \cdots (x-cd)$$

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} G_2 = ab + bc + \dots = 0 \\ G_3 = abc + \dots = 0 \end{array} \right. \quad = x^6 + p_1 x^5 + p_2 x^4 + \dots + p_6$$

$$p_1 = -G_2 = 0 \quad p_6 = (abcd)^3 = -1$$

$$abcd = -1$$

$$x g(1/x) = 0 \quad (-\frac{1}{x})^6 + p_1(-\frac{1}{x})^5 + p_2(-\frac{1}{x})^4 + \dots - 1 = 0$$

$$\downarrow g(1-\frac{1}{x}) = 0$$

$$x^6 + p_5 x^5 + p_4 x^4 + p_3 x^3 + p_2 x^2 - 1 = 0 \Rightarrow p_5 = 0 \quad p_4 = -p_2$$

$$\therefore g(x) = x^6 + p_3x^4 + p_3x^3 - p_2x^2 - 1$$

$$\Rightarrow g(x) = [x^2(ab+cd)x-1] [x^2(ac+bd)x-1] [x^2(bc+ad)-1].$$

$$\begin{aligned} p_3 &= -3 + (ab+cd)(ac+bd) + (ab+cd)(ad+bc) + (ac+bd)(ab+dc) \\ &= -3 + a(abt+bcad+acd)+bc(-) = 1 \quad (\text{暴力算}) \end{aligned}$$

前期 Review

2018.10.15

1.  $f(x)$  带余除法  $f(x) = q(x)g(x) + r(x) \quad \deg(r) < \deg(g)$

2.  $\gcd(f, g) = d(x) \Leftrightarrow \exists u(x), v(x) \text{ st. } u(x)f + v(x)g = d(x)$

3. Euclid 算法

4. 中国剩余定理

$g_1(x), \dots, g_s(x)$  两两互素  $\exists f(x)$  满足  $f(x) \equiv f_1(x) \pmod{g_1}, \dots, f(x) \equiv f_s(x) \pmod{g_s}$

5. 因式分解  $f(x) = p_1(x)^{a_1} \cdots p_s(x)^{a_s}$

C E  $f(x) = a_n(x-c_1)^{a_1} \cdots (x-c_s)^{a_s} \quad c_i \in C \quad a_i = 4b_i \leq 0$

R  $f(x) = a_n(x-c_1)^{a_1} \cdots (x-c_s)^{a_s} (x^2+a_1x+b_1)^{b_1} \cdots (x^2+a_tx+b_t)^{b_t}$

Q  $f(x) = a_nx^n + \dots + a_1x + a_0 \in \mathbb{Z}[x] \quad \leftarrow \text{难度大}$

$$x = \frac{s}{t} \quad \gcd(s, t) = 1 \quad s | a_n, t | a_0$$

Eisenstein 判别法

$$p \nmid a_n, \quad p | a_i \quad i=0, 1, \dots, n-1 \quad p^2 \nmid a_0.$$

6. 多元多项式

单元素性质仍可应用？

Next  
•  $f(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  为对称多项式  $\Leftrightarrow \exists g(x_1, \dots, x_n) \in k[x_1, \dots, x_n]$  st.

$f = g(b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n)$   $b_1, b_2, \dots, b_n$  为基本对称多项式

•  $f = f_1 + f_2 + \dots + f_k$   $f_i$  为  $k$  次对称多项式

$f$  对称  $\Rightarrow f_i$  对称

$f_k$  首项为  $a_k x^k$  ( $x^k = x_1^{k_1} \cdots x_n^{k_n}$ )

待定系数法  $\exists g_i(x_1, \dots, x_n) \in k[x_1, \dots, x_n]$   $a_k x_1^{k_1} \cdots x_{n-1}^{k_{n-1}} x_n^{k_n}$

$g_i(b_1, \dots, b_n)$  首项也为  $a_k x^k$

$b_i x^{l_i} \quad l_1 > l_2 > \dots > l_n$

$g_i(x_1, \dots, x_n) = b_i x^{l_1 - l_2} \cdots x_{n-1}^{l_{n-1} - l_n} x_n^{l_n}$

$g_i(x_1, \dots, x_n) = \sum_{l \in I} a_l x^l \quad x_l^l x^k \quad (l_1 > l_2 > \dots > l_n)$

方法

e.g. 1  $f(x_1, \dots, x_n) = \sum_{1 \leq i < j < k \leq n} (x_i^2 x_j^2 x_k + x_i^2 x_j x_k^2 + x_i x_j x_k^2)$

$= g(b_1, \dots, b_n)$

首项  $x_1^2 x_2^2 x_3 \quad x_1^2 x_2 x_3 x_4 \quad x_1 x_2 x_3 x_4 x_5$

$\therefore g(x_1, \dots, x_n) = x_1^{2+2} x_2^{2+1} x_3^1 + A x_1^{2+1} x_2^{1+1} x_3^1 x_4^1 + B x_1^{1+1} x_2^1 x_3^1 x_4^1 x_5^1$

$g(x_1, \dots, x_n) = x_2 x_3 + Ax_1 x_4 + x_5$

$f(x_1, \dots, x_n) = f(b_1, \dots, b_n) = b_2 b_3 + A b_1 b_4 + B b_5$

取  $x_1 = x_2 = x_3 = x_4 = 1 \quad x_5 = \dots = x_n = 0$  形式

$b_1 = 4 \quad b_2 = 6 \quad b_3 = 4 \quad b_4 = 1 \quad b_5 = \dots = 0$

$\therefore f(1, 1, 1, 1, 0, \dots) = 12 \quad 24 + 4A = 12 \Rightarrow A = -3$  组合考虑

取  $x_1 = x_2 = \dots = x_5 = 1 \quad 0 \dots$

$b_1 = 5 \quad b_2 = 10 \quad b_3 = 10 \quad b_4 = 5 \quad b_5 = 1$

$f(1, 1, 1, 1, 1, 0, \dots) = 3 \times 5 = 30 \quad 100 + 25A + B = 30 \Rightarrow B = 5$

引入多形式多项式

$$S_k = x_1^k + x_2^k + \dots + x_n^k \quad k=0, 1, \dots$$

Newton 恒等式

$$\sum_{k=n} S_k - 6_1 S_{k-1} + \dots + (-1)^{k-1} 6_{k-1} S_1 + (-1)^k 6_k = 0 \quad \text{--- 前置}$$

$$\sum_{k>n} S_k - 6_1 S_{k-1} + \dots + (-1)^{n+1} 6_{n+1} S_{k-n+1} + (-1)^n 6_n S_{k-n} = 0$$

递推

$$k=1 \quad S_1 = 6_1 = x_1 + \dots + x_n$$

$$k=2 \quad S_2 = 6_1 S_1 + 26_2 = 0 \Rightarrow S_2 = 6_1 S_1 - 26_2 = 6_1^2 - 26_2$$

$$k=3 \quad S_3 = 6_1 S_2 + 6_2 S_1 - 36_3$$

$$\Rightarrow S_3 = 6_1 S_2 - 6_2 S_1 + 36_3 = 6_1^3 - 36_1 6_2 + 36_3$$

$$S_k \in h(\{6_1, \dots, 6_k\})$$

反表示  $S=6$

$$\Downarrow 6_1 = S_1$$

$$6_2 = \frac{1}{2}[S_2 + 6_1 S_1] = \frac{1}{2}(S_1^2 - S_2)$$

$$6_3 = \frac{1}{3}[S_3 - 6_1 S_2 + 6_2 S_1] = \frac{1}{6}(S_1^3 - 3S_1 S_2 + 2S_3)$$

$$6_n = h(S_1, S_2, \dots, S_n)$$

$\Rightarrow 6, S$  相互表示 -- 线性代数意义下等价

推广  $f \in k[x_1, \dots, x_n]$  是对称多项式 则存在唯一  $h \in k[x_1, \dots, x_n]$  st. 一一对应

$$f(x_1, \dots, x_n) = h(S_1, \dots, S_n)$$

-- NT

证法1:  $k=n \quad S_n = 6_1 S_{n-1} + 6_2 S_{n-2} + \dots + (-1)^n 6_n S_0 = 0$

$$f(x_1) = (x-x_1)(x-x_2) \dots (x-x_n)$$

$$= x^n - 6_1 x^{n-1} + 6_2 x^{n-2} + \dots + (-1)^n 6^n$$

$$\text{令 } x=x_i$$

$$x_i^n - 6_1 x_i^{n-1} + \dots + (-1)^n 6_n = 0$$

$$\text{全相加} \quad \underbrace{\sum_{i=1}^n x_i^n}_{S_n} - 6 \underbrace{\sum_{i=1}^n x_i^{n-1}}_{S_{n-1}} + \dots + (-1)^n n 6_n = 0$$

$$2^{\circ} k>n \quad S_k - 6_1 S_{k-1} + \dots + (-1)^{k-1} 6_{k-1} S_{k-n+1} + (-1)^k 6_1 S_{k-n} = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow x^{k-n} f(x) = x^k - 6_1 x^{k-1} + \dots + (-1)^n 6_n x^{k-n}$$

令  $x=x_i, \dots$  其餘同上

$f(x)$  为常数

$$3^{\circ} k < n \quad S_k - 6_1 S_{k-1} + \dots + (-1)^{k-1} 6_{k-1} S_1 + (-1)^k 6_k S_0 = (-1)^k (n-k) 6_k$$

$(x^n - 6_1 x^{n-1} + \dots + (-1)^n 6_n) (S_0 x^k + S_1 x^{k-1} + \dots + S_{k-1} x + S_k)$  为  $x^n$  的系数

$$\Rightarrow f(x_1) (S_0 x^k + S_1 x^{k-1} + \dots + S_{k-1} x + S_k)$$

$$= f(x_1) \left( \frac{n}{k+1} x^k + \frac{n}{k} x_1 x^{k-1} + \dots + \sum_{i=1}^n x_1^{k-i} x + \frac{n}{k+1} x_1^k \right)$$

$$\Rightarrow f(x_1) \cdot \frac{n}{k+1} (x^k + x_1 x^{k-1} + \dots + x_1^{k-1})$$

$$= f(x_1) \frac{\frac{n}{k+1} x^{k+1} - x_1^{k+1}}{x - x_1} = f(x_1) \frac{\frac{n}{k+1} x^{k+1}}{x - x_1} - \boxed{f(x_1) \frac{\frac{n}{k+1} x_1^{k+1}}{x - x_1}}$$

$$x^{k+1} = \frac{f(x_1)}{x - x_1} \Rightarrow f(x)$$

$\deg < n$

矛盾

$$= x^{k+1} f(x) = x^{k+1} (n x^{n-1} - (n-1) 6_1 x^{n-2} + \dots + (-1)^k (n-k) 6_k x^{n-k})$$

$$= n x^{n+k} - (n-1) 6_1 x^{n+k-1} + \dots + (-1)^k (n-k) 6_k x^n + \dots + \dots$$

e.g. 2 证明  $\exists$  三次方程  $x^3 + ax^2 + bx + c = 0$  有三根实部均为 0

$$\Leftrightarrow a > 0 \quad ab - c > 0 \quad c > 0$$

$x_1, x_2, x_3$  为根  $\left\{ \begin{array}{l} 1^{\circ} x_1, x_2, x_3 \text{ 为实数} \\ 2^{\circ} x_1 = \alpha i, \quad x_2 = \beta + \gamma i, \quad x_3 = \beta - \gamma i \end{array} \right.$

$$1^{\circ} \quad a = -6_1 = -(x_1 + x_2 + x_3) > 0$$

$$c = -6_3 > 0$$

P283 1.2

P293 5.6.8

注  
重要性

## 第二章 行列式与矩阵 (Determinants Matrices)

### 3.1 行列式的定义与性质

定义1  $\det(A_{ii}) = A_{ii}$   $\det(A) = \sum_{i=1}^n a_{ik} A_{ik}$

$$= \sum_{k=1}^n a_{kj} A_{kj}$$

定义2  $\det(A) = \sum_{\substack{(i_1, i_2, \dots, i_n \\ j_1, j_2, \dots, j_n}} (-1)^{i_1 j_1 + i_2 j_2 + \dots + i_n j_n} a_{i_1 j_1} a_{i_2 j_2} \dots a_{i_n j_n}$

定义3  $\det(A) > \det(\vec{a}_1, \dots, \vec{a}_n)$   $\vec{a}_1, \dots, \vec{a}_n$  为  $A$  的  $n$  个行向量

满足 ① 反对称  $\det(-a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) = -\det(a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n)$  只有  $n$  个向量

② 多重线性性  $\det(\dots, \lambda \vec{a}_i + \mu \vec{a}'_i, \dots) = \lambda \det(\dots, \vec{a}_i, \dots) + \mu \det(\dots, \vec{a}'_i, \dots)$

③ 规范性  $\det(\vec{e}_1, \vec{e}_2, \dots, \vec{e}_n) = 1$

定义3  $\rightarrow$  定义2

$$\vec{a}_i = (a_{i1}, \dots, a_{in}) = \sum_{j=1}^n a_{ij} \vec{e}_j$$

???

$$\det(A) = \det(\vec{a}_1, \dots, \vec{a}_n) = \det\left(\sum_{j=1}^n a_{1j} \vec{e}_j, \dots, \sum_{j=1}^n a_{nj} \vec{e}_j\right)$$

$$= \sum_{j=1}^n a_{1j} \det(\vec{e}_1, \dots, \vec{e}_n) \quad \dots \text{顺序相乘} \\ (\text{单层向量例})$$

$$= \sum_{j=1}^n \dots \sum_{j=n}^n a_{1j} \dots a_{nj} \det(\vec{e}_1, \dots, \vec{e}_n)$$

$$= \sum_{\substack{(i_1, i_2, \dots, i_n \\ j_1, j_2, \dots, j_n)}} a_{i_1 j_1} \dots a_{i_n j_n} (-1)^{i_1 j_1 + i_2 j_2 + \dots + i_n j_n} \det(\vec{e}_1, \dots, \vec{e}_n)$$

### 行列式性质

(1) 互换两行行列式变号

(2) 某一行公因子可以提取行列式外面  $\det(\dots, \lambda \vec{a}_i, \dots) = \lambda \det(\dots, \vec{a}_i, \dots)$

(3) 某一行拆成两向量之和，则行列式为对应两行列式之和

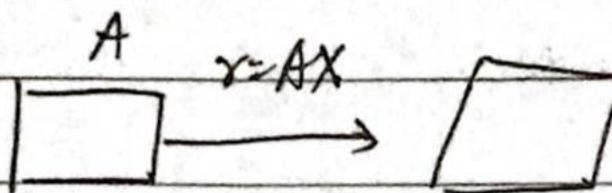
$$\det(\dots, \vec{a}_i + \vec{b}_i, \dots) = \det(\dots, \vec{a}_i, \dots) + \det(\dots, \vec{b}_i, \dots)$$

(4) 两行相等, 行列式为0

(5) ... 成比例 ...

(6) 某一行乘一个常数加到另一行, 行列式不变

1\* 行列式的几何意义:



$$\det(AB) = \det(A) \det(B)$$

面积变换比值

(伴随..)

定理1

$$AA^* = A^*A > \det(A)$$

$$\Leftrightarrow \sum_{i,j} a_{ik}a_{ij} = \det A \delta_{ij}$$

n维空间  $n-1$  个向量线性无关  $\rightarrow$  唯一向量

$\vec{a}_e$

定理2 (Laplace 展开定理)

$$\det A = \sum_{1 \leq j_1 < \dots < j_p \leq n} A \left| \begin{smallmatrix} i_1 & \dots & i_p \\ j_1 & \dots & j_p \end{smallmatrix} \right| (-1)^{i_1+j_1+\dots+i_p+j_1+\dots+j_p} A \left| \begin{smallmatrix} i_{p+1} & \dots & i_n \\ j_{p+1} & \dots & j_n \end{smallmatrix} \right|$$

证明:  $\boxed{i_1=1, \dots, i_p=p}$  key:

$$\det A = \det(\vec{a}_1, \dots, \vec{a}_n) = \det\left(\vec{a}_{i_1}, \vec{e}_{j_1}, \dots, \vec{a}_{i_p}, \vec{e}_{j_p}, \vec{a}_{i_{p+1}}, \dots, \vec{a}_n\right)$$

$$\xrightarrow{\text{展开}} = \underbrace{\sum_{j_1=1}^n \dots \sum_{j_p=1}^n}_{\substack{j_1, \dots, j_p \text{ 互不相同} \\ \text{故排序}}} a_{i_1 j_1} - a_{i_p j_p} \det(\vec{e}_{j_1}, \dots, \vec{e}_{j_p}, \vec{a}_{i_{p+1}}, \dots, \vec{a}_n)$$

$$\sum_{\substack{1 \leq j_1 < \dots < j_p \leq n \\ j_1, \dots, j_p \text{ 互不相同}}} \quad \text{故排序} \quad \left| \begin{array}{cccc} 0 & a_{i_1 k_1} & \dots & a_{i_1 k_p} \\ 0 & a_{i_p k_1} & \dots & a_{i_p k_p} \\ \vdots & \vec{a}_{i_1} & & \vec{a}_{i_p} \\ & \vec{a}_{i_{p+1}} & & \vec{a}_n \end{array} \right.$$

$\downarrow$  合为2行 (换形式) //

$$= \sum_{1 \leq k_1 < \dots < k_p \leq n} \sum_{\substack{(k_1, \dots, k_p) \\ (j_1, \dots, j_p)}} a_{i_1 j_1} \dots a_{i_p j_p} \det(\vec{e}_{j_1}, \vec{e}_{j_2}, \dots, \vec{e}_{j_p}, \vec{a}_{i_{p+1}}, \dots, \vec{a}_n)$$

$$= \sum_{1 \leq k_1 < \dots < k_p \leq n} (-1)^{k_1 + k_2 + \dots + k_p} \left| \begin{array}{cc} a_{i_1 k_1} & \dots & a_{i_1 k_p} \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_{i_p k_1} & \dots & a_{i_p k_p} \\ \hline 1 & \times & 0 \\ \hline a_{i_{p+1} k_{p+1}} & & a_{i_n k_n} \end{array} \right|$$

$$= \sum_{1 \leq k_1 < \dots < k_p \leq n} (-1)^{1+2+\dots+p+k_1+\dots+k_p} A\begin{pmatrix} 1 & p \\ k_1 & k_p \end{pmatrix} A\begin{pmatrix} p+1 & n \\ k_{p+1} & k_n \end{pmatrix}$$

定理3 (Binet-Cauchy 定理)  $A \in F^{m \times m}$   $B \in F^{n \times n}$

$$\det(AB) = \begin{cases} 0 & n \neq m \text{ (非滿秩)} \\ \det(A)\det(B) & n = m \end{cases} \quad (1) =$$

$$\sum_{1 \leq j_1 < \dots < j_m \leq n} A\begin{pmatrix} 1, 2, \dots, m \\ j_1, j_2, \dots, j_m \end{pmatrix} B\begin{pmatrix} j_1, j_2, \dots, j_m \\ 1, 2, \dots, m \end{pmatrix} \quad n \geq m \quad \text{取範圍由來直}$$

3) 論證明:

$$A = (a_{ij})_{m \times n} \quad B = \begin{pmatrix} \vec{b}_1 \\ \vdots \\ \vec{b}_n \end{pmatrix} \quad AB = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11}\vec{b}_1 + \dots + a_{1n}\vec{b}_n \\ a_{21}\vec{b}_1 + \dots + a_{2n}\vec{b}_n \\ \vdots \\ a_{m1}\vec{b}_1 + \dots + a_{mn}\vec{b}_n \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\det(AB) = \det \left( \sum_{j=1}^n a_{1j} b_{j1}, \dots, \sum_{j=1}^n a_{mj} b_{j1} \right)$$

$$\sum_{1 \leq j_1 < \dots < j_m \leq n} a_{1j_1} \dots a_{mj_m} \det(\vec{b}_{j_1}, \dots, \vec{b}_{j_m})$$

當会在這步出現冗長  $\rightarrow 99$

1)  $n=m$  用0補足方陣 0

$$\begin{aligned} 1) & \quad n=m \\ & \sum_{1 \leq j_1 < \dots < j_m \leq n} a_{1j_1} \dots a_{mj_m} (-1)^{1+j_1+\dots+j_m} \det(\vec{b}_{j_1}, \dots, \vec{b}_{j_m}) \end{aligned}$$

P117 完全展開  
 $\delta \neq (\det \lambda)^{-1}$   
加多項式

-  $\det(A)\det(B)$  分开拆出

P140<sup>2</sup> 3

2)  $n > m$

$$\begin{aligned} & \sum_{1 \leq j_1 < \dots < j_m \leq n} \sum_{k_1 < \dots < k_n} a_{1j_1} \dots a_{mj_m} \det(\vec{b}_{j_1}, \dots, \vec{b}_{j_m}) \\ & \text{方案} \quad \text{方案} \quad \text{方案} \quad \text{方案} \quad \text{方案} \quad \text{方案} \end{aligned}$$

$\xrightarrow{\text{方案}} \xrightarrow{\text{方案}} \xrightarrow{\text{方案}} \xrightarrow{\text{方案}} \xrightarrow{\text{方案}} \xrightarrow{\text{方案}}$

$a_{1j_1} \dots a_{mj_m} \det(\vec{b}_{j_1}, \dots, \vec{b}_{j_m})$

位置不夠放，故挑項計算

沒太過前三項

定理 4  $A \in F^{m \times n}$   $B \in F^{n \times p}$   $C = AB \in F^{m \times p}$

$$C(i_1, \dots, i_r) = \sum_{1 \leq k_1 < \dots < k_r \leq n} A(k_1, \dots, k_r) B(j_1, \dots, j_r) \quad \dots \text{ 排出中间}$$

①  $r \leq n$  按上式正常算

②  $r > n$  补 0 = 0

证:  $A = \begin{pmatrix} \vec{a}_1 \\ \vec{a}_2 \\ \vdots \\ \vec{a}_m \end{pmatrix}$   $B = (\vec{b}_1, \dots, \vec{b}_n)$   $AB = \begin{pmatrix} \vec{a}_1 \vec{b}_1 & \dots & \vec{a}_1 \vec{b}_n \\ \vec{a}_2 \vec{b}_1 & \dots & \vec{a}_2 \vec{b}_n \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \vec{a}_m \vec{b}_1 & \dots & \vec{a}_m \vec{b}_n \end{pmatrix}$

$$C = \begin{pmatrix} \vec{a}_{i_1} \vec{b}_{j_1} & \dots & \vec{a}_{i_1} \vec{b}_{j_r} \\ \vec{a}_{i_2} \vec{b}_{j_1} & \dots & \vec{a}_{i_2} \vec{b}_{j_r} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ \vec{a}_{i_r} \vec{b}_{j_1} & \dots & \vec{a}_{i_r} \vec{b}_{j_r} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \vec{a}_{i_1} \\ \vdots \\ \vec{a}_{i_r} \end{pmatrix} (\vec{b}_{j_1}, \dots, \vec{b}_{j_r}) = A_i B_j \quad A \in F^{r \times n} \quad B \in F^{n \times r}$$

$$\therefore \det(C) = \det(A_i B_j) = \sum_{1 \leq k_1 < \dots < k_r \leq n} A_i \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \dots & r \\ k_1 & \dots & k_r \end{pmatrix} B_j \begin{pmatrix} k_1 & \dots & k_r \\ 1 & \dots & r \end{pmatrix}$$

5.9.1 (Cauchy 不等式)  $a_1, \dots, a_n, b_1, \dots, b_n \in \mathbb{R}$

$$(a_1 b_1 + a_2 b_2 + \dots + a_n b_n)^2 \leq (a_1^2 + \dots + a_n^2)(b_1^2 + \dots + b_n^2)$$

等号成立当且仅当  $\frac{a_1}{b_1} = \frac{a_2}{b_2} = \dots = \frac{a_n}{b_n}$

证:  $A = \begin{pmatrix} a_1 & \dots & a_n \\ b_1 & \dots & b_n \end{pmatrix}$

$$A A^T = \begin{pmatrix} \sum a_i^2 & \sum a_i b_i \\ \sum a_i b_i & \sum b_i^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\therefore \det(A A^T) = (\sum a_i^2)(\sum b_i^2) - (\sum a_i b_i)^2 \geq 0$$

$$= \sum_{1 \leq j_1 < j_2 \leq n} A(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ j_1 & j_2 \end{smallmatrix}) A^T(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ j_1 & j_2 \end{smallmatrix}) \geq \sum_{1 \leq j_1 < j_2 \leq n} (A(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ j_1 & j_2 \end{smallmatrix}))^2 \geq 0$$

等号成立  $A(\begin{smallmatrix} 1 & 2 \\ j_1 & j_2 \end{smallmatrix}) = 0 \Rightarrow a_{j_1} b_{j_2} - a_{j_2} b_{j_1} = 0 \Rightarrow \frac{a_{j_1}}{b_{j_1}} = \frac{a_{j_2}}{b_{j_2}}$

原理 5 (Cramer 法则)

✓ 否则多维解

$A \in \mathbb{P}^{n \times n}$   $b \in \mathbb{P}^n$   $\det(A) \neq 0$   $\Rightarrow A\vec{x} = \vec{b}$  有唯一解

$$\Rightarrow \vec{x} = \left( \frac{\det(A_1)}{\det(A)}, \frac{\det(A_2)}{\det(A)}, \dots, \frac{\det(A_n)}{\det(A)} \right)^T$$

$A_j = \begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & \dots & b_1 & \dots & a_{1n} \\ a_{21} & \dots & b_2 & \dots & a_{2n} \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ a_{n1} & \dots & b_n & \dots & a_{nn} \end{vmatrix}$   
第 j 列

$$\vec{x} = A^{-1}\vec{b} = \frac{A^*}{\det(A)} \vec{b} \quad \dots \text{原理}$$

## 3.2 行列式计算

### 1. 化行列式为三角形式

E.g. 1

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & \dots & n \end{vmatrix} \stackrel{\text{差为 } 1}{=} \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & \dots & n \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & \dots & n-1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & \dots & n-1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \dots & n-1 & -1 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 1 & -1 \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & \dots & n-1 & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & \dots & n-1 & -1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \dots & n-1 & -1 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 1 & -1 \end{vmatrix}$$

差为 1  
倍数

$$= (-1)^{\binom{n}{2}} \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & \dots & n \\ 0 & 1 & 2 & \dots & n-1 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & \dots & n-2 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 1 \end{vmatrix} = (-1)^{\binom{n}{2}} n! \times \frac{1}{n!}$$

### 2. 建立递推公式

$\lambda = 0 \Leftrightarrow$  两两不相等

E.g. 2 (Vandermonde)

行  $\times$  列 相 减

$$\Delta_n(x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n) = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & x_1 & x_1^2 & \dots & x_1^n \\ 1 & x_2 & x_2^2 & \dots & x_2^n \\ 1 & x_3 & x_3^2 & \dots & x_3^n \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 1 & x_n & x_n^2 & \dots & x_n^n \end{vmatrix} \stackrel{\downarrow}{=} \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & \dots & 1 \\ 0 & (x_2-x_1) & x_2^2-x_1^2 & \dots & x_n^2-x_1^2 \\ 0 & x_2(x_3-x_1) & x_2^2(x_3-x_1) & \dots & x_n^2(x_n-x_1) \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & x_2^{n-2}(x_n-x_1) & x_2^{n-1}(x_n-x_1) & \dots & x_n^{n-1}(x_n-x_1) \end{vmatrix} = (x_2-x_1) \dots (x_n-x_1) \Delta_{n-1}(x_2, \dots, x_n)$$

$$\delta_2 = x_2 - x_1$$

$$\therefore \Delta_n = \prod_{1 \leq i < j \leq n} (x_j - x_i) \quad \dots \text{适合递归}$$

$$\text{E.g.3 } \Delta_n = \begin{vmatrix} a & b & 0 \\ c & a & b \\ 0 & \ddots & b \\ 0 & & c & a \end{vmatrix} = a\Delta_{n-1} - bc\Delta_{n-2}$$

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \Delta_1 = a \\ \Delta_2 = a^2 - bc \end{array} \right.$$

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \Delta_n = a\Delta_{n-1} - bc\Delta_{n-2} \end{array} \right.$$

改写为  $\Delta_n - a\Delta_{n-1} + bc\Delta_{n-2} = 0$  为特征方程解  $t = \lambda_1, \lambda_2$

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \lambda_1 \neq \lambda_2 \quad \Delta_n = C_1 \lambda_1^n + C_2 \lambda_2^n \\ \lambda_1 = \lambda_2 \quad \Delta_n = (C_1 + nC_2) \lambda_1^n \end{array} \right.$$

key: 考虑行行作差能消

从基础观察，行与行相减

$$\text{E.g.4 } \Delta_n = \begin{vmatrix} a_1+b_1 & a_1+b_2 & \cdots & a_1+b_n \\ \vdots & & & \\ a_n+b_1 & a_n+b_2 & \cdots & a_n+b_n \end{vmatrix}$$

$$\frac{1}{a_i+b_j} - \frac{1}{a_n+b_j} = \frac{a_i - a_n}{(a_i+b_j)(a_i+b_n)}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} a_1+b_1 & a_1+b_2 & \cdots & a_1+b_n \\ \frac{a_1-a_2}{(a_2+b_1)(a_1+b_1)} & & & \\ \frac{a_1-a_n}{(a_n+b_1)(a_1+b_1)} & \frac{a_1-a_n}{(a_n+b_n)(a_1+b_n)} & & \end{vmatrix} = (a_1-a_2) \cdots (a_1-a_n) \begin{vmatrix} a_1+b_1 & a_1+b_2 & \cdots & a_1+b_n \\ \frac{1}{(a_2+b_1)(a_1+b_1)} & & & \\ \frac{1}{(a_n+b_1)(a_1+b_1)} & \frac{1}{(a_n+b_n)(a_1+b_n)} & & \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= (a_1-a_2) \cdots (a_1-a_n) \cdot \begin{vmatrix} a_1+b_1 & a_1+b_2 & \cdots & a_1+b_n \\ a_2+b_1 & a_2+b_2 & \cdots & a_2+b_n \\ \vdots & & & \\ a_n+b_1 & a_n+b_2 & \cdots & a_n+b_n \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} 1 & & & \\ & 1 & & \\ & & 1 & \\ & & & 1 \end{vmatrix}$$

求和，类行变换地做到变换

$$\begin{vmatrix} 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ \frac{1}{a_1+b_2} & & \\ \vdots & & \\ \frac{1}{a_n+b_n} & & \end{vmatrix} = \frac{\prod_{i>j} (a_i - a_j)(b_i - b_j)}{\prod_{j=1}^n (a_1 + b_j)(a_j + b_1)} \cdot \Delta_n = \frac{\prod_{k<1} (a_k - a_i)(b_k - b_i)}{\prod_{j>1} (a_k + b_j)(a_j + b_k)}$$

### 3. 拆行(列)、利用线性性

$$\text{E.g.5 } \begin{vmatrix} x_1+a_1b_1 & a_1b_2 & \cdots & a_1b_n \\ a_2b_1 & x_2+a_2b_2 & \cdots & a_2b_n \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_nb_1 & a_nb_2 & \cdots & a_nb_n \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} x_1 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ a_2b_1 & x_2+a_2b_2 & \cdots & a_2b_n \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ a_nb_1 & a_nb_2 & \cdots & a_nb_n \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} a_1b_1 & a_1b_2 & \cdots & a_1b_n \\ 0 & x_2 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ 0 & & \cdots & x_n \end{vmatrix} \in a_1b_1 x_2 \cdots x_n$$

$$= a_{1b_1}x_2 \cdots x_n + x_1(x_2 | \begin{array}{c} x_3 + a_3 b_3 \\ a_3 b_3 \\ x_4 + a_4 b_4 \end{array}) + a_2 b_2 x_3 \cdots x_n$$

$$= a_{1b_1}x_2 \cdots x_n + a_2 b_2 x_1 x_3 \cdots x_n + \cdots + a_n b_n x_1 \cdots x_{n-1} = x_1 x_2 \cdots x_n \left( 1 + \frac{a_1}{x_1} + \frac{a_2}{x_2} + \cdots + \frac{a_n}{x_n} \right)$$

E.g. 6

$$\Delta_n(x, y, a_1, a_2, \dots, a_n) = \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & x & \cdots & x \\ y & a_2 & \cdots & x \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & x \\ y & \cdots & y & a_n \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & x & \cdots & x \\ y & a_2 & \cdots & x \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & x \\ y & \cdots & y & x \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & x & \cdots & x \\ 0 & a_2 & \cdots & x \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & x \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 & a_n x \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} a_1-y & x-y & \cdots & x-y & 0 \\ 0 & a_2-y & \cdots & x-y & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & x-y & 0 \\ 0 & \cdots & 0 & a_n-y & 0 \\ y & y & \cdots & y & x \end{vmatrix}$$

$$+ (a_n-x) \begin{vmatrix} a_1 & x & \cdots & x \\ y & a_2 & \cdots & x \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & x \\ y & \cdots & y & a_n x \end{vmatrix}$$

对称性质

$$= x(a_1-y)(a_2-y) \cdots (a_{n-1}-y) + (a_n-x) \Delta_{n-1} \Rightarrow \text{算出 } \Delta_n \text{ 的 } \text{解}$$

$$= y(a_1-x)(a_2-x) \cdots (a_{n-1}-x) + (a_n-y) \Delta_{n-1}$$

V. 加法

E.g. 7

$$\begin{vmatrix} x_1+a_1b_1 & a_1b_1 \\ x_2+a_2b_2 & a_2b_2 \\ \vdots & \vdots \\ a_n b_1 & a_n b_n \\ \cdots & \cdots \\ x_{n+1}+a_{n+1}b_{n+1} & a_{n+1}b_{n+1} \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & b_1 & b_2 & \cdots & b_n \\ 0 & x_1+a_1b_1 & & & \\ \vdots & & \ddots & & \\ 0 & & & \ddots & \\ & & & & x_n \end{vmatrix}_{(n+1) \times (n+1)} = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & b_1 & \cdots & b_n \\ a_1 & x_1 & & \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \\ a_n & 0 & \cdots & x_n \end{vmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{vmatrix} 1+a_1b_1+\cdots+a_nb_n & b_1 & \cdots & b_n \\ 0 & x_1 & \cdots & x_n \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \\ 0 & & & x_n \end{vmatrix} = x_1 \cdots x_n \left( 1 + \frac{a_1}{x_1} + \cdots + \frac{a_n}{x_n} \right)$$

P130 4(1) 131(4)

P140 1.(4) 151 ✓

行列式定义

正角序  $\rightarrow$  顺

$$\Delta = \sum_{(i_1, i_2, \dots, i_n)} (-1)^{T(i_1, i_2, \dots, i_n)} a_{1i_1} a_{2i_2} a_{3i_3} \dots a_{ni_n} \dots \textcircled{1}$$

$$= \sum_{(j_1, j_2, \dots, j_n)} (-1)^{T(j_1, j_2, \dots, j_n)} a_{1j_1} a_{2j_2} \dots a_{nj_n} \dots \textcircled{2}$$

证上式相等  $a_{1j_1} a_{2j_2} \dots a_{nj_n}$  来自不同的列

按所在列指标从小到大重排:  $a_{1i_1} a_{2i_2} \dots a_{ni_n}$   
 其中每个  $i_j$  ( $1 \leq j \leq n$ ) 是原列指标  $j$  在  $i_j$  的行指标  $i_1, i_2, \dots, i_n$  中的行指标

看  $a_{1j_1} a_{2j_2} \dots$  重排:列指标  $j_1$  与  $j_2$  对换时, 引起行指标  $i_1, i_2$  对换移到指标排列  $(j_1, \dots, j_n)$  经  $s$  次对换来标准排列  $(1, 2, \dots, n)$ 乘积中各因子的顺序相应地重新排列为  $a_{1i_1} a_{2i_2} \dots a_{ni_n}$ 各行指标由标准排列经  $s$  次对换来  $(i_1, i_2, \dots, i_n)$ s 为偶时  $(j_1, \dots, j_n)$  与  $(i_1, \dots, i_n)$  与标准排列同为偶排列s 为奇时,  $(j_1, \dots, j_n)$  与  $(i_1, \dots, i_n)$  与标准排列相反, 为奇排列

$$\therefore (-1)^{T(j_1, \dots, j_n)} = (-1)^s = (-1)^{T(i_1, \dots, i_n)}$$

$$(-1)^{T(j_1, \dots, j_n)} a_{1j_1} a_{2j_2} \dots a_{nj_n} = (-1)^{T(i_1, \dots, i_n)} a_{1i_1} a_{2i_2} \dots a_{ni_n}$$

加权系数

当  $(j_1, \dots, j_n)$  取遍所有  $n$  元排列时,  $(i_1, i_2, \dots, i_n)$  也取遍所有  $n$  元排列

#

P30 4.(2)

$$\begin{array}{c|ccccc} & a_1 & b_2 & \dots & b_n \\ \hline c_2 & a_2 & & & & \\ \vdots & & a_{n-1} & \textcircled{0} & & \\ \hline c_n & & a_n & & & \end{array} \quad \begin{aligned} \Delta_1 &= a_1 & \Delta_2 &= a_1 a_2 - b_2 c_2 \\ \Delta_3 &= a_3 (a_1 a_2 - b_2 c_2) + c_3 (-a_2 b_3) \\ &= a_1 a_2 a_3 - a_2 b_3 c_3 - a_3 b_2 c_2 \end{aligned}$$

 $n \geq 3$  时

$$\Delta_n = a_n \Delta_{n-1} + (-1)^{n+1} c_n \begin{vmatrix} b_2 & \dots & b_n \\ a_2 & \textcircled{0} & \dots \\ \vdots & \ddots & \textcircled{0} \end{vmatrix} = a_n \Delta_{n-1} - c_n b_n a_2 \dots a_{n-1}$$

递推:  $\Delta_n = a_n \cdot a_{n-1} \dots a_3 (a_1 a_2 - b_2 c_2) - c_n b_n a_2 \dots a_{n-1} - c_{n-1} b_{n-1} a_2 \dots a_{n-2} a_n$ 

$$= a_1 a_2 \dots a_n - a_2 a_3 \dots a_n \left( \frac{b_2 c_2}{a_2} + \frac{b_3 c_3}{a_3} + \dots + \frac{b_n c_n}{a_n} \right)$$

设  $a_1 \dots a_n \neq 0$   $n \geq 3$  时

$$\therefore \Delta_n = a_1 a_2 \dots a_n (a_1 - \frac{b_2 c_2}{a_2} - \dots - \frac{b_n c_n}{a_n})$$

换号法：

$$\Delta_n = a_1 \dots a_n - \sum_{j=2}^n (b_j c_j \prod_{i=j+1}^n a_i)$$

P1305

①

反对称  $A^T = -A$  结论：奇数阶反对称矩阵的行列式为 0

② 奇数阶反对称矩阵所有元素代数余子式之和为 0

证. ①  $\det(A^T) = \det(A) = (-1)^n \det(A) \Rightarrow \det(A) = 0$

②  $A_{ij}$  为反对称矩阵  $\det(A_{ii}) = 0$

$$\det(A_{ij}) = \det(A_{ji}^T) = (-1)^{2m} \det(A_{ij}) = -\det(A_{ij})$$

$$\det(A_{ij}) + \det(A_{ji}) = 0$$

行列式展开

定理 3.3.3

$$\text{高阶 } \Delta_{ij} A_{ij} = \begin{cases} \Delta, & k=i; \\ 0, & k \neq i; \end{cases} \quad \sum_{i=1}^n a_{ik} A_{ij} = \begin{cases} \Delta, & k=j; \\ 0, & k \neq j; \end{cases}$$

P133

$$\Delta_n = \begin{vmatrix} 2005^{10} & 1 & & & \\ 1 & 2005^{10} & 1 & & \\ & 1 & 2005^{10} & 1 & \\ & & \ddots & \ddots & 1 \\ & & & 1 & 2005^{10} \end{vmatrix} \Rightarrow \Delta_n = 2005^{10} \Delta_{n-1} - \Delta_{n-2}$$

$$\Delta_1 = 2005^{10} - 1 = 1 + 2005^{20}$$

由特征值法 解得  $\cos \theta \pm i \sin \theta = e^{i\theta}, e^{-i\theta}$

$$\begin{cases} x + iy = \Delta_1 \\ g_1 x + g_2 y = \Delta_2 \end{cases} \quad \begin{aligned} \Delta_1 &= x g_1^{n-1} + y g_2^{n-1} \\ &= \frac{\Delta_1 g_2 g_1^{n-1} - \Delta_2 g_1^{n-1}}{g_2 - g_1} = \frac{\Delta_1 g_1 g_2^{n-1} - \Delta_2 g_2^{n-1}}{g_2 - g_1} \\ &= \frac{\Delta_1 g_1 g_2 (g_1^{n-2} - g_2^{n-2}) + \Delta_2 (g_2^{n-1} - g_1^{n-1})}{g_2 - g_1} \end{aligned}$$

$$g_1 \cdot g_2 = 1 \quad g_2 - g_1 = 2i \sin \theta$$

$$g_2^{n-1} - g_1^{n-1} = (\cos(n-1)\theta + i \sin(n-1)\theta) - (\cos(1)\theta + i \sin(1)\theta)$$

$$= 2i \sin((n-1)\theta)$$

$$g_1^{n-1} - g_2^{n-1} = -2i \sin((n-1)\theta)$$

$$\Delta_1 = 2005\theta \quad \Delta_2 = 1 + 2\cos 2\theta$$

$$\Delta_n = \frac{2005\theta - 2i\sin(n-2)\theta + (1+2\cos 2\theta)2i\sin(n-1)\theta}{2i\sin\theta}$$

$$= \frac{-2\cos\theta \sin(n-2)\theta + \sin(n-1)\theta + 2\cos 2\theta \sin(n-1)\theta}{\sin\theta}$$

$$= \frac{-[\sin(n-1)\theta + \sin(n-3)\theta] + \sin(n-1)\theta + \sin(n+1)\theta + \sin(n-3)\theta}{\sin\theta}$$

$$= \frac{\sin(n+1)\theta}{\sin\theta}$$

P140 1.15) 最后一步骤

$$x \neq 1 \text{ 时 } \Delta_n = \frac{x^{2n+2}}{x-1} = x^{2n} + x^{2n-2} + \dots + x^2 + 1$$

显然  $\Delta_n$  是  $x$  的多项式，因而为  $x$  的连续函数。因此， $x \neq 1$  时

$$\Delta_n = \lim_{x \rightarrow 1} (x^{2n} + x^{2n-2} + \dots + x^2 + 1) = n+1$$

可见对所有  $x$  均成立

P140 1.13)

$$\begin{vmatrix} a+b & a & & \\ b & a+b-a & 0 & \\ & -b & a+b & \\ 0 & & -b & a+b \end{vmatrix} = (a+b)\Delta_{n-1} - ab\Delta_{n-2} \dots$$

1.12)

$$\begin{vmatrix} x & a & a & \dots & a \\ a & x & - & - & a \\ & - & - & - & a \\ -a & & -a & x \end{vmatrix}$$

$$\Delta_n = D_1 + D_2 = \begin{vmatrix} a & -a & - & - & a \\ -a & x & - & - & a \\ -a & -a & x & - & a \\ -a & -a & -a & x \end{vmatrix} + \begin{vmatrix} x-a & 0 & - & - & 0 \\ -a & x & a & - & a \\ 1 & -a & -a & a & x \end{vmatrix}$$

D 第一行加到各行

(处理为上三角)

$$a \begin{vmatrix} 1 & - & - & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & x+a & 2a & \dots & 2a \\ & x+a & - & - & x+a \\ 0 & - & - & 0 & -x+a \end{vmatrix} = a(x+a)^{n-1} = D_1$$

$$D_2 = (x-a)\Delta_{n-1}$$

$$\therefore \Delta_n = a(x+a)^n + (x-a) \Delta_{n-1}$$

$$\Delta_n \text{ 中将 } a \text{ 换 } x-a \text{ 得 } \Delta_n^T = (-a)(x+a)^{n-1} + (x+a) \Delta_{n-1}^T$$

$$x \Delta_n^T = \Delta_n$$

$$a \neq 0 \text{ 时} \quad \Delta_n = \frac{a(x+a)^n + a(x-a)^n}{(x+a)-(x-a)} = \frac{(x+a)^n + (x-a)^n}{2}$$

$$\therefore \Delta_n = \frac{(x+a)^n + (x-a)^n}{2}$$

$$a \neq 0 \text{ 时} \quad \Delta_n = x^n = \frac{(x+a)^n + (x-a)^n}{2} \Rightarrow \Delta_n = \frac{(x+a)^n + (x-a)^n}{2} \text{ 对所有 } a \text{ 成立}$$

Date: 2018.10.25

## √ 隆多项式，找根

## 5. 视行列式为某个变量的多项式

Ex. 8  $\begin{vmatrix} x & a_1 & \cdots & a_{n-1} \\ a_1 & x & & \\ a_2 & a_2 & \ddots & \\ \vdots & \vdots & & a_{n-1} \\ a_n & a_n & \cdots & x \end{vmatrix}_{n \times n} = x^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + \cdots + a_1x + a_0 = f(x)$

← 令加第1列:  $x + a_1 + \cdots + a_{n-1}$ 

$$\Delta = (x - a_1)(x - a_2) \cdots (x - a_{n-1})(x + a_1 + \cdots + a_{n-1})$$

Ex. 9 排列组合  $\pm x_{i_1} x_{i_2}^2 \cdots x_{i_n}^{n-1} \rightarrow \text{deg}(f) = \frac{n(n-1)}{2}$

 $x_i$  为主元 令  $x_i = x_j$   $(x_i - x_j) \mid f$ .

$$\begin{matrix} \downarrow \\ x_2 - x_1 \\ x_3 - x_2 \\ x_4 - x_3 \\ \cdots \end{matrix} \Rightarrow \prod_{1 \leq i < j \leq n} (x_i - x_j) \mid f$$

$$\therefore f = C \prod_{1 \leq i < j \leq n} (x_i - x_j) \quad C=1$$

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1 & x_1 & x_2 & \cdots & x_n \\ x_1 & x_2 & \cdots & x_n \\ x_2 & x_3 & \cdots & x_n \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ x_1 & x_2 & \cdots & x_n \end{vmatrix} \text{ Vandermonde}$$

Ex. 10 补全到  $(n+1) \times (n+1)$ , 且加入第  $n+1$  列

$$\Delta_k = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & x_1 & x_2 & \cdots & x_n \\ x_1^{k+1} & x_2^{k+1} & \cdots & x_n^{k+1} \\ x_1^{k+1} & x_2^{k+1} & \cdots & x_n^{k+1} \\ x_1^n & x_2^n & \cdots & x_n^n \end{vmatrix}$$

$$\Delta = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 1 & \cdots & 1 \\ x_1 & x_2 & \cdots & x_n \\ x_1^k & x_2^k & \cdots & x_n^k \\ x_1^n & x_2^n & \cdots & x_n^n \end{vmatrix} = \prod_{1 \leq i < j \leq n} (x_j - x_i) (x_j - x_1) \cdots (x_j - x_n)$$

$$= (-1)^{n+2} \Delta_0 + (-1)^{n+3} \Delta_1 x + \cdots + (-1)^{n+k} \Delta_k x^k$$

$$= \prod_{1 \leq j < i \leq n} (x_j - x_i) (x^n - 6_1 x^{n-1} + 6_2 x^{n-2} + \cdots + (-1)^{n-k} 6_{n-k} x^{k+1} \cdots )$$

$$= \prod_{1 \leq j < i \leq n} (x_j - x_i) (-1)^{n-k} G_{n-k}(x_1, \dots, x_n) = (-1)^{n+k+1} \Delta_k$$

E.g.11

$$\prod_{i=1}^n \prod_{j=1}^n (a_i + b_j) \begin{vmatrix} \frac{1}{a_1+b_1} & \frac{1}{a_1+b_2} & \cdots & \frac{1}{a_1+b_n} \\ \vdots & & & \\ \frac{1}{a_n+b_1} & \frac{1}{a_n+b_2} & \cdots & \frac{1}{a_n+b_n} \end{vmatrix} = f(a_1, \dots, a_n, b_1, \dots, b_n)$$

$$f = C \prod_{1 \leq i < j \leq n} (a_j - a_i)(b_j - b_i) \quad \begin{cases} a_i = \frac{1}{2} + ix \\ b_j = \frac{1}{2} - jx \end{cases} \quad \text{取特殊值} \rightarrow C$$

## 6. 利用矩阵乘法

$$A \in F^{m \times n}, B \in F^{n \times m}$$

$$\det(AB) = \det A \det B \quad \det(I^{(m)} - AB) = \det(I^{(n)} BA)$$

$$E.g.12 \quad \begin{vmatrix} S_0 & S_1 & S_{n+1} \\ S_1 & S_2 & S_n \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ S_{n+1} & \cdots & S_{2n+2} \end{vmatrix} \quad S_k = x_1^k + x_2^k + \cdots + x_n^k$$

若矩阵各元素为好多项相加

$$\begin{pmatrix} S_0 & S_1 & \cdots & S_{n+1} \\ S_1 & S_2 & \cdots & S_n \\ \vdots & & & \vdots \\ S_{n+1} & \cdots & \cdots & S_{2n+2} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & & & 1 \\ x_1 & \cdots & x_n & | \\ \vdots & & \vdots & | \\ x_1^{n+1} & \cdots & x_n^{n+1} & | \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & x_1 & \cdots & x_1^{n+1} \\ 1 & x_2 & \cdots & x_2^{n+1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 1 & x_n & \cdots & x_n^{n+1} \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow \text{考虑分为2个矩阵乘积}$$

$$E.g.13 \quad f(x) = (x-x_1) \cdots (x-x_{k+1}) = x^{k+1} + c_{k+1, k+2} x^{k+2} + \cdots + c_{k+1, 0}$$

$$f_i(x) = 1 \cdots \overset{i}{\underset{\text{节}}{\text{节}} \cdots} \underset{\text{尾}}{\text{尾}}$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} f_1(x_1) & f_2(x_1) & \cdots & f_{k+1}(x_1) \\ \vdots & & & \\ f_1(x_{k+1}) & f_2(x_{k+1}) & \cdots & f_{k+1}(x_{k+1}) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 & 0 \\ 1 & x_2 - x_1 & 0 & 0 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ 1 & x_{k+1} - x_1 & \cdots & x_{k+1} - x_1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ (x_2 - x_1)(x_3 - x_1) \\ \vdots \\ (x_{k+1} - x_1) \cdots (x_{k+1} - x_{k+1}) \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & x_1 & \cdots & x_1^{k+1} \\ 1 & x_2 & \cdots & x_2^{k+1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 1 & x_n & \cdots & x_n^{k+1} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & c_{21} & \cdots & c_{21} \\ 1 & \ddots & \ddots & c_{n+1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & 1 \\ 1 & c_{n+1} & \cdots & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad (c_{ii} = 1)$$

## 行列式基础运算

$$E.g.14 \quad \begin{pmatrix} 1+a_1b_1 & a_1b_2 & a_1b_n \\ a_2b_1 & 1+a_2b_2 & a_2b_n \\ a_nb_1 & \cdots & 1+a_nb_n \end{pmatrix} = I^{(n)} + \begin{pmatrix} a_1 \\ \vdots \\ a_n \end{pmatrix} (b_1 \cdots b_n) \quad \therefore \det(A) = 1 + \sum_{i=1}^n a_i b_i + \cdots + a_n b_n = 1 + \sum_{i=1}^n a_i b_i$$

$$\therefore \det(A) = 1 + \sum_{i=1}^n a_i b_i$$

$$\text{E.g.15} \quad \left| \begin{array}{cccc} \cos(\alpha_1) & \cos(\alpha_2) & \dots & \cos(\alpha_n) \\ \cos(2\alpha_1) & & & \\ \cos(n\alpha_1) & \cos(n\alpha_2) & & \end{array} \right| \quad \begin{aligned} \cos(120^\circ) &= 2\cos^2 60^\circ - 1 \\ \cos(130^\circ) &= 4\cos^3 60^\circ - 3\cos 60^\circ \\ \cos(k\alpha_1) &= P_k(\cos(\alpha)) = P_{k+1}(2^{k-1}x^k) + \dots \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \left| \begin{array}{cccc} P_1(\cos(\alpha_1)) & \dots & P_1(\cos(n\alpha_1)) \\ \vdots & & \vdots \\ P_n(\cos(\alpha_1)) & \dots & P_n(\cos(n\alpha_1)) \end{array} \right| = \left| \begin{array}{cccc} 1 & & * & \\ 2 & \dots & & \\ 0 & & \ddots & \\ & & & n \end{array} \right| \left| \begin{array}{cccc} \cos(\alpha_1) & \dots & \cos(\alpha_n) \\ \cos(2\alpha_1) & & \\ \cos(n\alpha_1) & \dots & \cos(n\alpha_n) \end{array} \right|$$

Vandermonde Matrix

循环矩阵

$$\text{E.g.16} \quad A = \begin{pmatrix} a_0 & a_1 & \dots & a_{n-1} \\ a_{n-1} & a_0 & \dots & a_{n-2} \\ \vdots & & & \vdots \\ a_1 & a_2 & \dots & a_0 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{令 } w \text{ 为 } x^n = 1 \text{ 的 } n \text{ 次单位根 } w = e^{i\frac{2\pi}{n}}$$

$$B = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & w & w^{n-1} \\ w^{n-1} & w^2 & w^{2(n-1)} \\ w & w^2 & w^{n(n-1)} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$AB = B \text{ diag}(f(1), f(w), \dots, f(w^{n-1}))$$

## 小测讲解

方法

$$\begin{vmatrix} 1+x_1+y_1 & x_1+y_2 & x_1+y_n \\ x_2+y_1 & 1+x_2+y_2 & \dots \\ x_n+y_1 & \dots & 1+x_n+y_n \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & y_1 & \dots & y_n \\ 0 & 1+x_1+y_1 & \dots & \\ 0 & \dots & 1+x_n+y_n & \end{vmatrix} = \begin{vmatrix} 1 & y_1 & \dots & y_n \\ -1 & 1+x_1 & \dots & x_1 \\ -1 & \dots & x_n & 1+x_n \end{vmatrix}$$

EASY 形式      YGS 公式

$$\geq \begin{vmatrix} 1 & 0 & -1 & \dots & -1 \\ 0 & 1 & y_1 & \dots & y_n \\ x_1 & \dots & 1 & \dots & \dots \\ \vdots & & & & \\ x_n & \dots & & & 1 \end{vmatrix} = \det(I^n + \begin{pmatrix} x_1 & \\ & x_2 \\ & & \ddots \\ & & & x_n \end{pmatrix}) (\underbrace{y_1 \dots y_n}_{1 \dots 1}) \geq \det\left(I^n + \begin{pmatrix} y_1 & \\ & y_2 \\ & & \ddots \\ & & & y_n \end{pmatrix}\right) \geq 1$$

3.  $A, B \in F^{n \times n}$   $AB$  与  $BA$  的渐近公式和相等

$$\sum_{1 \leq i_1 < \dots < i_k \leq n} (AB)_{i_1 \dots i_k} \stackrel{?}{=} \sum_{1 \leq j_1 < \dots < j_k \leq n} (BA)_{j_1 \dots j_k}$$

$$\text{左: } \sum_{1 \leq i_1 < \dots < i_k \leq n} \sum_{1 \leq j_1 < \dots < j_k \leq n} A_{i_1 \dots i_k} B_{j_1 \dots j_k}$$

$$\text{右: } \sum_{1 \leq j_1 < \dots < j_k \leq n} \sum_{1 \leq i_1 < \dots < i_k \leq n} B_{j_1 \dots j_k} A_{i_1 \dots i_k}$$

$$\therefore \det(A)^{(n)} - AB \geq \det(A)^{(n)} - BA \quad \#$$

%

$$\det(\lambda I - A) = \lambda^n - \sum_{1 \leq j_1 \leq n} A_{j_1 j_1} \lambda^{n-1} + \sum_{1 \leq j_1 < j_2 \leq n} A_{j_1 j_2} \lambda^{n-2} - \dots + (-1)^k \sum_{1 \leq j_1 < \dots < j_k \leq n} A_{j_1 \dots j_k} \lambda^{n-k} - (-1)^n \det(A)$$

### §3 矩阵运算

#### 1. 线性运算—加、数乘

满足八条运算规则

$$(1) (A+B)+C = A+(B+C)$$

$$(2) A+B=B+A$$

$$(3) A+0=0+A=A$$

$$(4) A+(-A)=0$$

$$(5) (\lambda+\mu)A = \lambda A + \mu A$$

$$(6) \lambda(A+B) = \lambda A + \lambda B$$

$$(7) \lambda(\mu A) = (\lambda\mu)A$$

$$(8) 1 \cdot A = A$$

$\Rightarrow$  构成线性空间  $F^{m \times n}$

#### 2. 乘法

→ 引入线性映射概念 乘  $\leftrightarrow$  线性映射的复合

$$\text{① } AB=AC \quad A \neq 0 \Rightarrow B=C$$

$$+ A^{-1} \text{ 存在} \Leftrightarrow B=C$$

$$\text{② } A^2 = -I \text{ (实)}$$

← 从几何本质理解

$$-I = \begin{pmatrix} -1 & 0 \\ 0 & -1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \pi & \sin \pi \\ \sin \pi & \cos \pi \end{pmatrix} \text{ 绕原点转 }\pi$$

$$\Rightarrow A = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \frac{\pi}{2} & -\sin \frac{\pi}{2} \\ \sin \frac{\pi}{2} & \cos \frac{\pi}{2} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -1 \\ 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

#### 3. 初等变换

①  $P_{ij}$  交换两列       $P_{ij} A$        $A P_{ij}$       ②  $D_{ij}(\lambda)$   $\downarrow$  行  $\downarrow$  列  
 $= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \cdots & 0 & \cdots & 1 \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \cdots & 1 & \cdots & 0 \end{pmatrix}$

将 i 列乘入 j 行

③  $T_{ij}(\lambda) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & \cdots & 0 & \cdots & 0 \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 0 & \cdots & 1 & \cdots & 0 \end{pmatrix}$        $T_{ij}(\lambda) A$

4. 齐次矩阵

· 基元素个数 = 维度

$$A \in F^{n \times n} \quad X \in F^{n \times n}, \text{ s.t. } AX = I^{(n)}$$

$$\textcircled{1} \quad A^{-1} = \frac{A^*}{\det(A)}$$

$$\textcircled{2} \quad \text{解 } AX = I$$

$$\text{Ex. 1} \quad A = \begin{vmatrix} 2 & 1 & & \\ 1 & 2 & \dots & \\ & \ddots & \ddots & 1 \\ & & 1 & 2 \end{vmatrix}_{n \times n} \quad \text{求 } A^{-1}:$$

$$\Delta_n = \det A = n+1 \quad \text{设 } i \leq j \quad A_{ij} = (-1)^{i+j} \Delta_{ij} \quad \Delta_{ij} = (-1)^{i+j} ((n+1) \min(i, j) - ij)$$

③ 初等变换

$$(1, A, 2) \xrightarrow{\text{行交换}} (1, \tilde{A}^*)$$

④ 找矩阵的化零多项式

$$f(x) = x^k + a_{k-1}x^{k-1} + \dots + a_1x + a_0$$

$$A^k + a_{k-1}A^{k-1} + \dots + a_0I = 0 \quad A \left| (A^k + a_{k-1}A^{k-1} + \dots + a_0I) \right. \quad \left. \sim \right] - a_0I$$

$$\text{Ex. 2} \quad A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & \dots & 1 \\ 1 & 0 & & \\ & \vdots & \ddots & \\ & & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{求 } A^{-1}$$

$$N = A + I \rightarrow N^2 = nN \quad (A + I)^2 = n(A + I) \quad A^2 + (2-n)A + (1-n)I = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow A^{-1} = -\frac{n-2}{n-1}I + \frac{1}{n-1}A$$

5. 分块运算

Schur 公式

$$\begin{pmatrix} \Sigma^{(m)} & 0 \\ -CA^* & \Sigma^{(m)} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} A & B \\ C & D \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} A & B \\ 0 & D - CA^*B \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} A & B \\ C & D \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \Sigma^{(m)} - A^*B \\ 0 & \Sigma^{(m)} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} A & 0 \\ C & D - CA^*B \end{pmatrix}$$

\* 相乘 打摺法

$$\begin{pmatrix} I^{(m)} & 0 \\ -CA^{-1} & I^{(n)} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} A & B \\ C & D \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} I^{(m)} - A^{-1}B \\ I^{(n)} \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} A & 0 \\ 0 & D - CA^{-1}B \end{pmatrix}$$

E.g. 3  $A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & | & 0 & 1 \\ & 1 & 0 & | & 1 \\ & 1 & 1 & | & 1 \end{pmatrix}$  求  $A^n$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} B & 2 \\ & B \end{pmatrix} \quad A^n = \begin{pmatrix} B^n & n \cdot B^{n-1} \\ & B^n \end{pmatrix} \dots$$

E.g. 4  $A, B, C, D \in F^{n \times n}$  且  $AC = CA$  证明:  $\det \begin{pmatrix} A & B \\ C & D \end{pmatrix} = \det (AD - CB)$

1°. A 可逆 (摺動法)

$$\begin{pmatrix} I^{(m)} & 0 \\ -CA^{-1} & I^{(n)} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} A & B \\ C & D \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} A & B \\ 0 & D - CAB \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\therefore \det \begin{pmatrix} A & B \\ C & D \end{pmatrix} = \det(A) \det(D - CAB) = \det(AD - CB)$$

2° A 不可逆 (摺動法)

$$A_S = \varepsilon I + A$$

$$AS = CA_S$$

C 2P解

$$\det(A_S) = \det(\varepsilon I + A) = \varepsilon^n + \dots + \det(A)$$

$\exists \varepsilon > 0$  .  $\varepsilon \in (0, \infty)$  A 可逆

$$\det \begin{pmatrix} A_S & B \\ C & D \end{pmatrix}, \det(ASD - CB) \quad \text{令 } \varepsilon \rightarrow 0^+$$

E.g. 5  $\det(I^{(m)} - AB) = \det(I^{(m)} - BA)$   $A \in F^{m \times n}$   $B \in F^{n \times m}$

$$\begin{pmatrix} I^{(m)} & A \\ B & I^{(n)} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} I^{(m)} & 0 \\ -B & I^{(n)} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} I^{(m)} - AB & A \\ 0 & I^{(n)} \end{pmatrix}$$

E.g. 6 求  $\begin{pmatrix} A & S \\ 0 & B \end{pmatrix}^{-1}$   $A \in F^{m \times m}$   $B \in F^{n \times n}$   $S \in F^{m \times n}$ . A, B 逆

$$\begin{pmatrix} A & S \\ 0 & B \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} A & 0 \\ 0 & B \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} I - A^{-1}S \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{pmatrix} I & S \\ 0 & I \end{pmatrix}^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} I & -S \\ 0 & I \end{pmatrix}$$

P175  $\rightarrow$  P124 \*

P195  $\rightarrow$  8

P214 145

例7.  $A \in F^{m \times n}$   $B \in F^{n \times m}$  且  $I^{(m)} - AB$  可逆, 证明:  $I^{(n)} - BA$  可逆, 并求其逆

可逆:  $\det(I^{(m)} - AB) = \det(I^{(n)} - BA) \neq 0$

求逆:  $\begin{vmatrix} I^{(m)} & 0 \\ -B & I^{(m)} \end{vmatrix} \left| \begin{array}{c} I^{(m)} \\ B \end{array} \right| \begin{pmatrix} I^{(m)} & A \\ 0 & I^{(m)} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} I^{(m)} & 0 \\ 0 & I^{(m)} - BA \end{pmatrix}$

$$\begin{vmatrix} I^{(m)} & -A \\ 0 & I^{(m)} \end{vmatrix} \left| \begin{array}{c} I^{(m)} \\ B \end{array} \right| \begin{pmatrix} I^{(m)} & 0 \\ -B & I^{(m)} \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} I^{(m)} - AB & 0 \\ 0 & I^{(n)} \end{pmatrix}$$

行列变换及其对应初等阵 × 建立联系

逆:  $\begin{pmatrix} I^{(m)} & A \\ B & I^{(m)} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} I^{(m)} & 0 \\ B & I^{(m)} \end{pmatrix} \left| \begin{array}{c} I^{(m)} \\ 0 \end{array} \right| \begin{pmatrix} I^{(m)} & 0 \\ 0 & I^{(m)} - BA \end{pmatrix} \left| \begin{array}{c} I^{(m)} \\ 0 \end{array} \right| \begin{pmatrix} I^{(m)} & A \\ 0 & I^{(m)} \end{pmatrix}$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} I^{(m)} & A \\ 0 & I^{(m)} \end{pmatrix} \left| \begin{array}{c} I^{(m)} - AB \\ I^{(m)} \end{array} \right| \begin{pmatrix} I^{(m)} \\ B \end{pmatrix} \left| \begin{array}{c} I^{(m)} \\ I^{(m)} \end{array} \right|$$

两边求逆:  $(I^{(n)} - BA)^{-1} = I^{(n)} + B(I^{(m)} - AB)^{-1}A$ .

前提  
正阵  $\leftrightarrow$  对称阵  
顺序

例8.  $A \in R^{n \times n}$   $A$  的各阶主子式均为正, 且非对角元均为负。

证明:  $A^{-1}$  的所有元素均为正。

证: 归纳法  $n=1$  时显然  $A^{-1} = a_{11}^{-1} > 0$

结论对  $n+1$  成立

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} A_1 & \alpha \\ \beta^T & \alpha_{nn} \end{pmatrix} \quad A \in F^{(n+1) \times (n+1)}$$

左行右列

$$\begin{pmatrix} I^{(n+1)} & 0 \\ -\beta^T A_1^{-1} & 1 \end{pmatrix} \left| \begin{array}{c} A_1 \ \alpha \\ \beta^T \ \alpha_{nn} \end{array} \right| \left| \begin{array}{c} I^{(n+1)} - A_1^{-1} \alpha \\ 0 \ \ 1 \end{array} \right| = \begin{pmatrix} A_1 & 0 \\ 0 & C \end{pmatrix} \quad C = \alpha_{nn} - \beta^T A_1^{-1} \alpha$$

两边取行列式  $\det(IA) = \det(A_1) \cdot C \quad C > 0$

$$A^{-1} = \begin{pmatrix} I^{(n+1)} & -A_1^{-1} \alpha \\ 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \left| \begin{array}{c} A_1^T \\ C^{-1} \end{array} \right| \left| \begin{array}{c} I^{(n+1)} & 0 \\ -\beta^T A_1^{-1} & 1 \end{array} \right| = \begin{pmatrix} A_1^{-1} + C A_1^{-1} \alpha^T \beta^T A_1^{-1} & -C^{-1} \alpha^T A_1^{-1} \\ -C^{-1} \beta^T A_1^{-1} & C^{-1} \end{pmatrix}$$

## §4 秩与相抵 (矩阵的运算技巧)

**定义 1**  $A \in F^{m \times n}$  (仅数, 行列式意义)  $A$  的非零子式的最大阶数称为  $A$  的秩 记为  $\text{rank}(A) = r(A)$   
性质 最多有多少行/列线性无关  
 $r \leq \min(m, n)$

**定理 1**  $A \in F^{m \times n}$   $B \in F^{n \times p}$

$$(1) r(AB) \leq \min(r(A), r(B))$$

$$(2) P, Q 可逆  $r(PAQ) = r(PA) = r(AQ) = r(A)$$$

特别地, 初等变换不改变矩阵的秩

$$\text{证: } (1) \min(r(A), r(B)) = r \text{ 不妨设 } r(A) = r$$

$$(AB) \left| \begin{array}{c} i_1 \dots i_{r+1} \\ j_1 \dots j_{r+1} \end{array} \right. = \sum_{1 \leq k_1 < \dots < k_{r+1} \leq n} A \left| \begin{array}{c} i_1 \dots i_{r+1} \\ k_1 \dots k_{r+1} \end{array} \right. B \left| \begin{array}{c} k_1 \dots k_{r+1} \\ j_1 \dots j_{r+1} \end{array} \right. = 0$$

↑ 从最大阶+1=0 证

$$r(AB) \leq r$$

几何: 两个空间重合的或空间维度小 (交集)

(1)  $P$  可逆

$$A = P^{-1}PA \quad r(A) \leq r(PA) \quad r(PA) = r(A)$$

↓ 成空间对像→写法

初等变换

**定理 2**  $A \in F^{m \times n}$  则存在可逆矩阵  $P, Q$ , 使  $A = P \begin{pmatrix} I^r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} Q$   $r=r(A)$

**定义 2**  $A, B \in F^{m \times n}$   $B$  是  $A$  经过有限次初等变换所得矩阵, 则称  $A \sim B$

$A$  与  $B$  相抵 (Equivalent)

$A \sim \begin{pmatrix} I^r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$  相抵标准形

根据 rank 分

**定理 3**  $A \sim B \Leftrightarrow \exists$  可逆阵  $P, Q$  s.t.  $B = PAQ \Leftrightarrow r(A) = r(B)$

最多  $\min(m, n)$

⇒ 具体例子, 关系与应用

例4:  $A \in F^{m \times n}$   $B \in F^{n \times p}$   $C \in F^{p \times q}$  证  $r(AB) + r(BC) - r(B) \leq r(ABC)$

$$\text{令 } B = I^n \quad r(A) + r(C) - n \leq r(AC) \leftarrow \text{估计EF界} (+\varepsilon)$$

$$\Leftrightarrow r(AB) + r(BC) \leq r(ABC) + r(B)$$

$$r \begin{pmatrix} AB \\ BC \end{pmatrix} \leq r \begin{pmatrix} ABC & \cancel{B} \\ \cancel{B} & B \end{pmatrix}$$

初等变换变形

$$r(ABC) = r \begin{pmatrix} ABC & AB \\ 0 & B \end{pmatrix} = r \begin{pmatrix} 0 & AB \\ -BC & B \end{pmatrix} = r \begin{pmatrix} BC & B \\ AB & B \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\geq r(BC) + r(AB)$$

例5  $r(A+B) \leq r(A) + r(B)$

$$r(A+B) = r \begin{pmatrix} A+B & B \\ B & B \end{pmatrix} \geq r(A+B) \quad \text{任何矩阵 rank} \geq 3 \text{矩阵 rank}$$

例6  $A \in F^{n \times n}$  则  $A^2 = A \Leftrightarrow r(A) + r(I-A) = n$

$$(A)(A-I) = 0$$

$$r(A^2 - A) = r \begin{pmatrix} A & A \\ A & I \end{pmatrix} \geq r \begin{pmatrix} A^2 - A & A \\ 0 & I \end{pmatrix} = r(A^2 - A) + n$$

例7  $A \in F^{m \times n}$  求  $X \in F^{m \times n}$  满足  $A^T X = X^T A \Rightarrow$  转置仍用标准形

$$A = P \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} Q \quad Q^T \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} P^T X Q^{-1} = X^T P \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{从0开始构造}$$

$$\text{设 } Y = \begin{pmatrix} Y_{11} & Y_{12} \\ Y_{21} & Y_{22} \end{pmatrix} \text{ 从 } A \quad Y_{11}^T = Y_{11} \quad Y_{21}^T = Y_{21} \quad Y = Y^T \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\Rightarrow X = (P^{-1})^T \begin{pmatrix} Y_{11} & 0 \\ Y_{12} & Y_{22} \end{pmatrix} Q \quad \text{其中 } \underline{Y_{11}^T = Y_{11}}$$

Last step:

④ 验证

$P_{225}$

$\begin{matrix} 4 & 5 \end{matrix} \rightarrow$

$P_{32}$

1 4

## 基本结论

例 1.  $r(A \oplus B) = r(A) + r(B)$  相加  $\rightarrow$  相乘

证:  $r(A) = r$   $r(B) = s$

$$A(\begin{smallmatrix} i_1 & \dots & i_r \\ j_1 & \dots & j_r \end{smallmatrix}) \neq 0 \quad B(\begin{smallmatrix} i'_1 & \dots & i'_s \\ j'_1 & \dots & j'_s \end{smallmatrix}) \neq 0$$

① 定义证

② 相抵标准形证

$$A = P_1 \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} Q_1 \quad B = P_2 \begin{pmatrix} I_s & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} Q_2$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} A \\ B \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} P_1 & P_2 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & I_s \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} Q_1 & 0 \\ 0 & Q_2 \end{pmatrix}$$

思路:

① 就是相抵形, 怎么处理

② 处理成标准形证

例 2:  $A \in F^{m \times n}$  列满秩  $\Leftrightarrow \exists m$  阶可逆阵  $P$  s.t.  $A = P \begin{pmatrix} I_m \\ 0 \end{pmatrix}$  ← 需行变换

证:  $A = P \begin{pmatrix} I_m \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} Q = P \begin{pmatrix} Q \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} = P \begin{pmatrix} Q & 0_{(m-n)} \end{pmatrix} - P \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \xleftarrow{\text{从左边}} \text{前提单位阵性质好}$

引: 行满秩  $A = \begin{pmatrix} I_m \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} Q$

例 3:  $A \in F^{m \times n}$  证明:  $r(A) = r \Leftrightarrow \exists$  列满秩阵  $B \in F^{m \times r}$  及行满秩阵  $C \in F^{r \times n}$

s.t.  $A = BC$

$$\begin{pmatrix} & \end{pmatrix}_{m \times n} = \begin{pmatrix} & \end{pmatrix}_{m \times r} \begin{pmatrix} & \end{pmatrix}_{n \times r} \quad \begin{matrix} \swarrow \text{数据压缩原理!} \\ \searrow \text{数据结构!} \end{matrix}$$

$$\Rightarrow m = r = 1000 \quad r = 10$$

$$\text{证: } A = \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} I_r \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} (I_r \otimes 0)$$

$$PAQ = P \begin{pmatrix} I_r \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \frac{(I_r \otimes 0)Q}{B}$$

$$\Leftarrow A = BC = P \begin{pmatrix} I_r \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} (I_r \otimes 0) Q = P \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} Q$$

## 相抵应用

Eg.8  $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$ :  $A \geq A$  证明: 存在可逆矩阵  $P$  s.t.  $A = P \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} P^{-1}$  且  $r = \text{rank}(A)$

$$\text{证明: } A = P \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} Q$$

$$P \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} Q \underbrace{Q^{-1}}_{\text{可逆}} P^{-1} = P \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} P^{-1}$$

家用技巧: 矩阵分块

$$\text{令 } Q = \begin{pmatrix} P_{11} & P_{12} \\ P_{21} & P_{22} \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{则上式 } P \begin{pmatrix} P_{11} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} P^{-1} = P \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow P_{11} = I_r$$

对  $P_{12}, P_{21}, P_{22}$  无要求, 任意都满足.

$$\Rightarrow Q = \begin{pmatrix} I_r & P_{12} \\ P_{21} & P_{22} \end{pmatrix} P^{-1}$$

$$\begin{aligned} A &= P \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} I_r & P_{12} \\ P_{21} & P_{22} \end{pmatrix} P^{-1} \\ &= P \begin{pmatrix} I_r & P_{12} \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} P^{-1} \quad \text{相乘} \end{aligned}$$

$\rightarrow$  相似变换

$$\begin{pmatrix} I_r & P_{12} \\ 0 & I_{n-r} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} I_r & P_{12} \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} I_r & -P_{12} \\ 0 & I_{n-r} \end{pmatrix} = P \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\Rightarrow \text{新 } P' = \left[ P \begin{pmatrix} I_r & -P_{12} \\ 0 & I_{n-r} \end{pmatrix} \right]^{-1}$$

Eg.9  $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  证:  $\nu(A) = \nu(AA^T)$

设  $\nu(A) = r$  存在可逆矩阵  $P$  s.t.  $A = P \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} Q$

$$AA^T = P \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} Q Q^T \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} P^T \quad \text{令 } Q = \begin{pmatrix} Q_1 \\ Q_2 \end{pmatrix} \quad Q_1 Q_1^T = \begin{pmatrix} Q_1 Q_1^T & Q_1 Q_2^T \\ Q_2 Q_1^T & Q_2 Q_2^T \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\nu(AA^T) = \nu \left( \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} Q_1 Q_1^T \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \right) = \nu \left( \begin{pmatrix} Q_1 Q_1^T & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \right) \rightarrow r \Leftrightarrow |Q_1 Q_1^T| \neq 0$$

$$Q_1 \in \mathbb{R}^{r \times n} \quad \det(Q_1 Q_1^T) = \sum_{1 \leq j_1 < \dots < j_r \leq n} (Q_1(j_1, \dots, j_r) Q_1^T(j_1, \dots, j_r))$$

$$= \sum_{1 \leq j_1 < \dots < j_r} (Q_1(j_1, \dots, j_r))^2 > 0$$

Cauchy-Schwarz

Eg.10  $A$  为实对称矩阵且  $\nu(A) = r$ , 证明:  $A$  至少有一个  $r$  阶主子式非 0

$$\text{pf: } A = P \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} Q \quad A = A^T \quad P \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} Q = Q^T \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} P^T$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} Q (P^T)^{-1} = P^T Q^T \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{令 } P^T Q^T = R = \begin{pmatrix} R_{11} & R_{12} \\ R_{21} & R_{22} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} R \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} R_{11}^T R_{12}^T \\ R_{21}^T R_{22}^T \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

相加

$$\Rightarrow R_1^T = R_1 \quad R_2 = 0 \quad \therefore P(\begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}) Q = P(\begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}) \begin{pmatrix} R_1^T & R_{12} \\ 0 & R_{22} \end{pmatrix} P^T = P(\begin{pmatrix} R_1^T & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}) P^T$$

$$\Rightarrow A(\begin{pmatrix} i_1 & \dots & i_r \\ i_{r+1} & \dots & i_n \end{pmatrix}) = P(\begin{pmatrix} 1 & \dots & r \\ i_{r+1} & \dots & i_n \end{pmatrix})^T \det(R_{11})$$

$$\exists 1 \leq i_1 < \dots < i_r \leq n \text{ s.t. } P(\begin{pmatrix} 1 & \dots & r \\ i_{r+1} & \dots & i_n \end{pmatrix}) \neq 0$$

E.g.11 设  $A \in F^{m \times n}$   $B \in F^{n \times m}$   $\lambda^n \det(\lambda I^{(m)} - AB) = \lambda^m \det(\lambda I^{(m)} - AB)$

$$\text{证明: } r(A) = r \quad A = P(\begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}) Q \quad \lambda I^{(m)} - AB = \lambda I^{(m)} - P(\begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}) Q B$$

$$= P(\lambda I^{(m)} - (\begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} Q B) P^T)$$

$$\therefore \det(\lambda I^{(m)} - AB) = \det(\lambda I^{(m)} - (\begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} Q B) P^T)$$

$$\det(\lambda I^{(m)} - PA) > \det(\lambda I^{(m)} - (Q B P) \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix})$$

$$\text{令 } Q B P = \begin{pmatrix} R_{11} & R_{12} \\ R_{21} & R_{22} \end{pmatrix} \quad \begin{aligned} \det(\lambda I^{(m)} - AB) &> \det\left(\lambda \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & I_{n-r} \end{pmatrix} - \begin{pmatrix} R_{11} & R_{12} \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}\right) \\ &= \lambda^{n-r} \det(\lambda I_r - R_{11}) \end{aligned}$$

$$\therefore \lambda^n \det(\lambda I^{(m)} - AB) = \lambda^{n+m-r} \underbrace{\det(\lambda I_r - R_{11})}_{\text{为中间项}}$$

11月11日，下午3:00-5:00

多项式、行列式、矩阵

## 55 广义逆矩阵

定义  $A \in C^{m \times n}$  称  $X \in F^{n \times m}$  为  $A$  的 penrose 广义逆

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} AXA = A \\ XAX = X \quad \text{记为 } A^+ \\ (AX)^T = AX \\ (XA)^T = XA \end{array} \right.$$

定理一:  $\forall A \in C^{m \times n}$  Penrose 广义逆存在唯一, 且  $A = BC$  为  $A$  的 满秩分解, 则  $A^+ = C^T (C C^T)^{-1} B^T B^{-1}$ 证明: 唯一性, 设  $X_1, X_2$  均为  $A$  的广义逆, 证  $X_1 = X_2$ 

$$X_1 = X_1 A X_1 = X_2 A X_2 A X_1 = X_2 (\overline{A X_2})^T (\overline{A X_1})^T = X_2 (\overline{A X_1 A X_2})^T = X_2 (\overline{A X_2})^T = \underline{X_1 A X_2}$$

利用古腾堡重新组合

$$= X_1 A X_1$$

$$= \overline{X_1 A^T X_2} = (X_1 A X_2 A)^T X_2 > (\overline{X_1 A})^T \cdot (\overline{X_1 A})^T X_2 = X_2 A X_1 A X_2 = X_2 A X_2 = X_2$$

在矩阵中，构造  $A^+$ ，验证其满足性质即可

$A^+$  构造：

$$\text{设 } r(A) = r \quad B \in \mathbb{C}^{m \times r} \quad C \in \mathbb{C}^{r \times n} \quad r(B) = r(C) = r$$

$$B = P \begin{pmatrix} I_r \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad C = (I_r, 0) Q \quad A = B C^{-1} = P \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} Q$$

$$\cdots \textcircled{1} \quad P \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} Q \times P \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} Q = P \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} Q \quad Q \times P = \begin{pmatrix} X_{11} & X_{12} \\ X_{21} & X_{22} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_{11} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow X_{11} = I_r$$

$$\Rightarrow X = Q^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} I_r & X_{12} \\ X_{21} & X_{22} \end{pmatrix} P^{-1} \quad X A X = X$$

$$\cdots \textcircled{2} \quad \cancel{Q^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} I_r & X_{12} \\ X_{21} & X_{22} \end{pmatrix} P^{-1} \rightarrow P \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} Q} \quad Q^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} I_r & X_{12} \\ X_{21} & X_{22} \end{pmatrix} P^{-1} = Q^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} I_r & X_{12} \\ X_{21} & X_{22} \end{pmatrix} P^{-1}$$

$$\therefore \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ X_{21} & 0 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} I_r & X_{12} \\ X_{21} & X_{22} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} I_r & X_{12} \\ X_{21} & X_{22} \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow X_{22} = X_{12} X_{21}$$

$$X = Q^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} I_r & X_{12} \\ X_{21} & X_{12} X_{21} \end{pmatrix} P^{-1} \rightarrow Q^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} I_r \\ X_{21} \end{pmatrix} (I_r - X_{12}) P^{-1}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ X_{21} & 0 \end{pmatrix} Q \tilde{Q}^T = Q \tilde{Q}^T \begin{pmatrix} I_r & X_{12} \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{记 } P^T P = \begin{pmatrix} P_{11} & P_{12} \\ P_{21} & P_{22} \end{pmatrix} \quad Q \tilde{Q}^T = \begin{pmatrix} Q_{11} & Q_{12} \\ Q_{21} & Q_{22} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\Rightarrow P_{11} = \tilde{Q}^T \tilde{Q} \quad \text{且} \quad Q_{11} = C C^T \quad \text{且}$$

$$X_{12} = P_{11}^{-1} P_{12} \quad X_{21} = \tilde{Q}_{12}^T (Q_{11}^{-1})$$

$$\therefore X = Q^{-1} \left[ \begin{pmatrix} I_r & P_{11}^{-1} P_{12} \\ \tilde{Q}_{12}^T (Q_{11}^{-1}) & \tilde{Q}_{12}^T (Q_{11}^{-1} P_{11}^{-1} P_{12}) \end{pmatrix} P^{-1} \right] = Q^{-1} \begin{pmatrix} I_r & P_{11}^{-1} (Q_{11}^{-1}) \\ Q_{12}^T (Q_{11}^{-1}) & P_{12} \end{pmatrix} P^{-1}$$

$$= Q^{-1} \left( \begin{pmatrix} Q_{11} & Q_{12} \\ Q_{21} & Q_{22} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} Q_{11}^{-1} \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} (P_{11}^{-1} - 0) \begin{pmatrix} P_{11} & P_{12} \\ P_{12} & P_{22} \end{pmatrix} P^{-1} \right)$$

$$= Q^{-1} (Q \tilde{Q}^T) \begin{pmatrix} I_r \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} (Q_{11}^{-1} P_{11}^{-1} (I_r - 0)) \xrightarrow[B]{P^{-1} P} P^{-1}$$

广义逆矩阵 相应  $D^+ = D$

11)  $(A^+)^+ = A$

12)  $(\lambda A)^+ = \lambda^+ A^+$

13)  $(\bar{A}^T)^+ = \overline{(A^+)^T}$

X:  $(AB)^+ = B^+ A^+$

P233

8.9.10

# 定理-1 (Steinitz 替换定理)

设  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_s$  为一组线性无关向量, 可用  $\beta_1, \dots, \beta_t$  线性表示  $\alpha_1 \in S \subset T$  且可以由  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_s$  替换  $\beta_1, \dots, \beta_t$  中  $s$  个向量, 只替换为  $\beta_1, \dots, \beta_s$ . st.  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_s, \beta_{s+1}, \dots, \beta_t\} \sim \{\beta_1, \dots, \beta_t\}$

$\Rightarrow$  对  $S$  由归纳

$$S = 1 \quad \alpha_1 \neq 0 \quad \alpha_1 = \lambda_1 \beta_1 + \dots + \lambda_t \beta_t \quad t < t$$

$$\text{不妨设 } \lambda_1 \neq 0, \quad ; \quad \beta_1 = \frac{1}{\lambda_1} \alpha_1 - \frac{\lambda_2}{\lambda_1} \beta_2 - \dots - \frac{\lambda_t}{\lambda_1} \beta_t \quad t < \alpha_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_t$$

$$\langle \beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_t \rangle \sim \langle \alpha_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_t \rangle \Rightarrow \langle \alpha_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_t \rangle \sim \langle \beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_t \rangle$$

$$\langle \alpha_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_t \rangle \sim \langle \beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_t \rangle$$

假均对  $S$  成立

( $\# S = t$ )

$$\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_s \text{ 线性无关} \Rightarrow \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_s \text{ 线性无关} \Rightarrow \langle \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_s, \beta_1, \dots, \beta_t \rangle \sim \langle \beta_1, \dots, \beta_t \rangle$$

$$\alpha_s \in \langle \beta_1, \dots, \beta_t \rangle \sim \langle \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_{s-1}, \beta_1, \dots, \beta_t \rangle$$

$$\alpha_s = \lambda_1 \alpha_1 + \dots + \lambda_{s-1} \alpha_{s-1} + \lambda_s \beta_1 + \dots + \lambda_t \beta_t \quad (\text{不妨设 } \lambda_s \neq 0)$$

同上变换证  $\sim$

$$\Rightarrow \beta_s = \frac{\alpha_s}{\lambda_s} = \frac{\lambda_1}{\lambda_s} \alpha_1 + \dots + \frac{\lambda_{s-1}}{\lambda_s} \alpha_{s-1} + \dots + \frac{\lambda_t}{\lambda_s} \beta_t \quad \underbrace{\in \langle \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_{s-1}, \beta_1, \dots, \beta_t \rangle}$$

· 推论 1: 设  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_s, \beta_1, \dots, \beta_t$  分别线性无关, 且  $\langle \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_s \rangle \sim \langle \beta_1, \dots, \beta_t \rangle \Rightarrow s = t$

P40 例 8.1.9

· 推论 2:  $S$  中任意两个极大无关组元素个数相等

P51 例 5.6.7

定义 3 向量组的极大无关组元素个数称为该向量组的秩

$$A \in \mathbb{P}^{m \times n} \quad A = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1 \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_m \end{pmatrix} = (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n) \quad r(A) = r(\alpha) \quad r(A) = r(\beta)$$

$$r(A) > r \quad A \begin{pmatrix} \beta_1 & \dots & \beta_r \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \end{pmatrix} \neq 0$$

3式所在行列式中

$\Rightarrow \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_r$  线性无关,  $\beta_1, \dots, \beta_r$  线性无关 存在非零子式  $\Rightarrow$  找出一个无关子集

思路: 反证法 引申发散证

2018.11.12

## 期中讲解

$$1. f(x) \equiv x^2(x+1)^2 g(x) \equiv 1 \pmod{(x+1)^2}$$

$$\begin{aligned} [-(x+1)-1]^2 [x(x+1)+2]^2 &\equiv [-\cdot(x+1)^2 - 3(x+1) + 2]^2 \equiv [3(x+1)+2]^2 \\ &\equiv 4[-3(x+1)+1] g_1(x) \equiv 1 \pmod{(x+1)^2} \end{aligned}$$

$\uparrow$   
 $\underline{g_1(x) \equiv 1 \pmod{3(x+1)+1}}$

就很快了！

$$\text{or } f(x) = x^2 g(x) \quad \begin{cases} x^2 g(x) + 1 = u(x)(x+1)^2 \\ x^2 g(x) - 1 = v(x)(x+1)^2 \end{cases}$$

$$2. D = (A+B)^2 - 4AB = (A-B)^2$$

非 P229

$$3. (J_n - BA)^{-1} = J_n + B(J_m - AB)^{-1} A$$

$$4. A = U \begin{pmatrix} D & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} V \quad A = D = \text{diag}(v_1, \dots, v_r)$$

$$AXA = A \quad XAX = X \quad (AX)^T = AX \quad \underline{XA = (XA)^T}$$

$$X = \begin{pmatrix} x_{11} & x_{12} \\ x_{21} & x_{22} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$X = \begin{pmatrix} D^1 & x_{12} \\ x_{21} & x_{22} \end{pmatrix} \leftarrow \begin{pmatrix} D^1 & x_{12} \\ x_{21} & x_{11} x_{22} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\Rightarrow X = V^T \begin{pmatrix} D^1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} U^T$$

逆

$$5. A^T = -A \quad \det(A) = r$$

$$A = P \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} Q$$

$$\begin{aligned} Q^T \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} P^T &= -P \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} Q \\ &= P \begin{pmatrix} P^{-1} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} P^T \end{aligned}$$

 $P_{11}$  逆

$$P_{11}^T = -P_{11}$$

$$A \begin{pmatrix} v_1 & \cdots & v_r \\ v_1 & \cdots & v_r \end{pmatrix} = P \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}^2 Q \quad \det P_{11} > 0$$

6.  $\Rightarrow$  附录 A 为标准形式一下 (差日递)

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad B = \begin{pmatrix} B_1 \\ B_2 \end{pmatrix} \quad AB = \begin{pmatrix} B_1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad \|AB\| = \sqrt{\|B_1\|^2} = \sqrt{2}$$
$$B_1 = (2, 0)^T$$

分析: 可惜点 ①  $D = [A+B]^2 - 4AB$  相似

② 日递公式没记住 (推一下) TAT 多看课本

③ 计算不熟练  $\rightarrow$  需要优化结论, 以后得好好做作业

题目风格分析: ① 贴近 LS 为底

② 考到大量结论

③ 注意(运算)技巧处理, 结论运用和记忆

定义 6  $V$  为线性空间  $S \subset V$  集合 称  $S$  为  $V$  的一组基

如果: ①  $S$  线性无关 ②  $V$  中任一向量都可以由  $S$  线性表示

若  $S$  有限, 称  $V$  为有限维线性空间, 称  $S$  为  $V$  的维数; 非有限维称无限维

注意

设  $\dim V = n$   $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n$  为  $V$  的一组基  $V$  有唯一地表示为

$$\alpha = x_1\alpha_1 + x_2\alpha_2 + \dots + x_n\alpha_n = (x_1, \dots, x_n)^T$$

称  $(x_1, \dots, x_n)$  为在基  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n$  下的坐标  
 $x = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$

基本结论

1. 任何有限维线性空间均有一组基;

2.  $n$  维线性空间中, 线性无关向量组 最多有  $n$  个元素;

线性无关 (验证)

3. 一组线性无关向量可扩充为  $V$  的一组基.

1 维空间  $\Leftrightarrow$  1 个基

E.g.  $V = \mathbb{C}$   $F = \mathbb{C}$  基  $\{1\}$   $\dim V = 1$

$F = \mathbb{R}$  基  $\{1, i\}$   $\dim V = 2$

$V = F[x]$   $\dim V = +\infty$  基  $\{1, x, x^2, \dots, x^n\}$

$V = F_n[x]$   $\dim V = n+1$  基  $\{1, x, \dots, x^n\}$

$V = F^{n \times m}$   $\dim V = n \times m$  基  $\{E_{ij}\}$

\* 区分 B1 教材!!

基变换后  
，<sub>在前</sub>

基变换  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$ ,  $\{\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n\}$  为  $V$  的两组基

$(\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n) = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n)^T$  T 为  $N$  阶可逆矩阵

$(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) = (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n) \cdot T^T$

2 坐标系  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  下坐标为  $x = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$   $\Rightarrow (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n) \cdot y^T = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) \cdot x^T$  基变换

$\{\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n\} \quad \cdots \quad y = (y_1, \dots, y_n)$   $y^T = T^{-1} x^T$  坐标变换

(基于的坐标变换)

## 5.2 子空间及其运算

定义  $W$  为  $V$  上线性子空间  $WCV$  子集合

结果: ①  $\alpha, \beta \in W \Rightarrow \alpha + \beta \in W$ ; ②  $\lambda \in F, \alpha \in W \Rightarrow \lambda \alpha \in W$  封闭性

称  $W$  为  $V$  的子空间 验证 2 条性质

例 1  $SCV$   $C_S := \left\{ \sum_{i=1}^m \lambda_i \alpha_i \mid \alpha_i \in S, \lambda_i \in F \right\}$  为由  $S$  生成的子空间。 $pf$ : 为包含  $S$  的最小子空间。

$pf$ : 该  $SCV$  为  $V$  的子空间  $\Rightarrow C_S \subset W$  ①

②  $Vi \in F, \alpha_i \in S \subset W \Rightarrow \sum_{i=1}^m \lambda_i \alpha_i \in W$   $\Rightarrow C_S \subset W$  封闭性

### 1. 求交

定理 1  $W_i \subset V$  为子空间, 记  $I$  则  $\bigcap_{i \in I} W_i$  为子空间 (子空间的交仍为子空间)

$pf$ :  $\alpha, \beta \in \bigcap_{i \in I} W_i \Rightarrow \alpha, \beta \in W_i, \forall i \in I \Rightarrow \alpha + \beta \in W_i \forall i \in I \Rightarrow \alpha + \beta \in \bigcap_{i \in I} W_i$

$\lambda \in \bigcap_{i \in I} W_i \Rightarrow \lambda \in W_i \forall i \in I \Rightarrow \lambda \in W_i \forall i \in I \Rightarrow \lambda \in \bigcap_{i \in I} W_i$

方法

例2  $V = \mathbb{F}^4$ ,  $W_1 = \langle \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3 \rangle$ ,  $W_2 = \langle \beta_1, \beta_2 \rangle$ , 求  $W_1 \cap W_2$

$$\alpha_1 = (1, 1, 2, 1, 0), \alpha_2 = (1, 1, 1, 1), \alpha_3 = (0, 1, 3, -2, 1), \beta_1 = (2, -1, 0, 1), \beta_2 = (1, 1, -1, 3, 1) \text{ 方法: 列向量}$$

$$\alpha \in W_1 \cap W_2 \Rightarrow \alpha = x_1\alpha_1 + x_2\alpha_2 + x_3\alpha_3 = y_1\beta_1 + y_2\beta_2 \Rightarrow (y_1, y_2) = (3, -1)$$

两边都能单独表示

$$\Rightarrow \alpha = (5, -2, -3, -4)t, \quad W_1 \cap W_2 = \langle (5, -2, -3, -4) \rangle$$

2. 乘积

$$W_1, W_k \subset V \text{ 子空间} \quad W_1 + \dots + W_k := \{ \alpha_1 + \dots + \alpha_k \mid \alpha_i \in W_i \}$$

定理2  $W_1, W_2, \dots, W_k$  为  $V$  的子空间, 则  $W_1 + \dots + W_k$  也为子空间

$$pf: \alpha \in W_1 + \dots + W_k \Rightarrow \alpha = \alpha_1 + \dots + \alpha_k \quad \alpha_i \in W_i$$

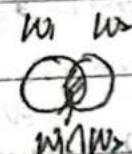
$$\beta \in W_1 + \dots + W_k \Rightarrow \beta = \beta_1 + \dots + \beta_k \quad \beta_i \in W_i$$

$$\therefore \alpha + \beta = (\alpha_1 + \beta_1) + \dots + (\alpha_k + \beta_k) \in W_1 + W_2 + \dots + W_k$$

$$\lambda \alpha = \lambda \alpha_1 + \lambda \alpha_2 + \dots + \lambda \alpha_k \in W_1 + W_2 + \dots + W_k$$

定理3 设  $W_1, W_2$  为  $V$  的子空间, 则

$$\dim(W_1 + W_2) = \dim W_1 + \dim W_2 - \dim(W_1 \cap W_2)$$



P64 26

Pg 9 23.6.8

最小子空间概念

$\star$  定理2:  $W_1, \dots, W_k$  为  $V$  的子空间, 则  $W_1 + \dots + W_k := \{w_1 + \dots + w_k \mid w_i \in W_i\}$  也为  $V$  的子空间, 且是包含  $W_1 \cup \dots \cup W_k$  的最小子空间  $\Rightarrow W_1 + \dots + W_k = \langle W_1 \cup \dots \cup W_k \rangle$

$\uparrow V$  底?

$\star$  推论1: 设  $M_i$  为子空间  $W_i$  的一组基  $i=1, \dots, k$   $W_1 + \dots + W_k = \langle M_1 \cup \dots \cup M_k \rangle$

$\star$  推论2:  $\dim(W_1 + \dots + W_k) \leq \dim W_1 + \dim W_2 + \dots + \dim W_k$

等号成立当且仅当  $M_1 \cup \dots \cup M_k$  是线性无关 (合成空间的基)

$$W_1 + W_2 = \langle M_1 \cup M_2 \rangle \quad M - \text{基}$$

定理3:  $W_1, W_2$  为  $V$  的子空间 则  $\dim(W_1 \cap W_2) = \dim W_1 + \dim W_2 - \dim(W_1 \cup W_2)$

证明:  $W_1 \cap W_2$  - 组基  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_r$

$$W_1: \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_r, \beta_1, \dots, \beta_s \quad \hookrightarrow \text{扩充基}$$

$$W_2: \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_r, \gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_t$$

思路: ①  $W_1 \cap W_2$  可由  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_r, \beta_1, \dots, \beta_s, \gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_t$  线性表示

②  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_r$  和  $\beta_1, \dots, \beta_s, \gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_t$  线性无关

$$\text{设 } \lambda_1 \alpha_1 + \dots + \lambda_r \alpha_r + \mu_1 \beta_1 + \dots + \mu_s \beta_s + \nu_1 \gamma_1 + \dots + \nu_t \gamma_t = 0 \quad \in W_1 \cap W_2$$

$$\Rightarrow \lambda_1 \alpha_1 + \dots + \lambda_r \alpha_r + \mu_1 \beta_1 + \dots + \mu_s \beta_s = -\nu_1 \gamma_1 - \dots - \nu_t \gamma_t \in W_1 \cap W_2$$

$$(i) -\nu_1 \gamma_1 - \dots - \nu_t \gamma_t = 0, \alpha_1 + \dots + \alpha_r \in \text{基} \Leftrightarrow \nu_i = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow \lambda_1 \alpha_1 + \dots + \lambda_r \alpha_r + \mu_1 \beta_1 + \dots + \mu_s \beta_s = 0 \Rightarrow \lambda_i = \mu_i = 0 \quad *$$

$\star$  推论1:  $\dim(W_1 \cap W_2) = \dim W_1 + \dim W_2$  等号成立  $\Rightarrow W_1 \cap W_2 = \{0\}$

$\star$  推论2:  $\dim(W_1 \cap W_2) \geq \dim W_1 + \dim W_2 - \dim V$

若  $\dim W_1 + \dim W_2 > \dim V \Rightarrow W_1 \cap W_2 \neq \{0\}$

定理3:  $\dim(W_1 + \dots + W_k) = \dim W_1 + \dim W_2 + \dots + \dim W_k$  等号成立  $\Leftrightarrow (W_1 + \dots + W_j) \cap W_{j+1} = \{0\} \quad j=1, 2, \dots, k-1$

$Pf: k-1 \geq 2$

$$\dim(W_1 + W_2 + W_3) \leq \dim(W_1 + W_2) + \dim W_3 - \dim((W_1 + W_2) \cap W_3)$$

$$\leq \dim W_1 + \dim W_2 + \dim W_3 - \dim(W_1 \cap W_2) - \dim((W_1 \cap W_2) \cap W_3)$$

线性空间比欧式更广，无度量运算、无角度...

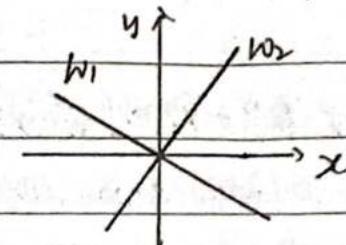
Date.

(定义)

(该部分相关)

定理2 设  $W_1, W_2$  为  $V$  的子空间，如果  $W_1 \cap W_2 = \{0\}$ ，则称  $W_1 + W_2$  为  $W_1$  与  $W_2$  的直和，记为： $W_1 \oplus W_2$

E.g.1  $V = \mathbb{R}^2$   $W_1 = \{\lambda e_1 | \lambda \in \mathbb{R}\}$   $W_2 = \{\lambda e_2 | \lambda \in \mathbb{R}\}$   $e_1 \neq e_2$   
 $W_1 \oplus W_2 = V$



定理4 下列命题等价 (结论可类推至n维)

(1)  $W_1 + W_2$  为直和;  $\rightarrow$  key: 正交分解唯一

(2)  $\forall \alpha \in W_1 + W_2$  则分解  $\alpha = \alpha_1 + \alpha_2$  是唯一的 ( $\alpha_1 \in W_1, \alpha_2 \in W_2$ )

(3)  $0 = \alpha_1 + \alpha_2$  ( $\alpha_1 \in W_1, \alpha_2 \in W_2$ )  $\Rightarrow \alpha_1 = 0, \alpha_2 = 0$

(4)  $\dim(W_1 + W_2) = \dim W_1 + \dim W_2$

(5) 设  $M_i$  为  $W_i$  的一组基，则  $M_1 \cup M_2$  为  $W_1 + W_2$  的一组基

pf. (1)  $W_1 \cap W_2 = \{0\} \Leftrightarrow$  (4)  $\Leftrightarrow$  (5)

1)  $\Leftrightarrow$  2) 2)  $\rightarrow$  反证同 -  $\alpha = \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 = \beta_1 + \beta_2$   $\alpha_1, \beta_1 \in W_1$   $\alpha_2, \beta_2 \in W_2$

$$\Rightarrow (\alpha_1 - \beta_1) + (\alpha_2 - \beta_2) = 0 \rightarrow \text{只能为 } 0 \Rightarrow \alpha_1 = \beta_1, \alpha_2 = \beta_2$$

再证 1)  $\Leftrightarrow$  3)  $W_1 \cap W_2 = \{0\} \Leftrightarrow \theta = \alpha + (-\alpha) \in W_1 \cap W_2$

$$\Rightarrow \exists \alpha \neq 0 \in W_1 \cap W_2 \Leftrightarrow \theta = \alpha + (-\alpha) \in W_1 + W_2 \text{ 矛盾}$$

( $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_k$  线性无关,  $\underbrace{\langle \alpha_1 + \alpha_2 + \dots + \alpha_k \rangle}$  直和)

对称

反对称

E.g.2  $V = F^{n \times n}$   $S = \{A \in F^{n \times n} | A^T = A\}$   $K = \{A \in F^{n \times n} | A^T = -A\}$  证  $V = S \oplus K$

证: ①  $V = S + K$  ②  $S + K$  为直和  $S \cap K = \{0\}$

①  $A = \underbrace{\frac{A+A^T}{2}}_{\text{对称}} + \underbrace{\frac{A-A^T}{2}}_{\text{反对称}}$

②  $A = A^T = -A^T \Rightarrow A^T = 0 = A$  唯一性 直和

## 3 同构与商空间

**定义1**  $V_1, V_2$  为  $\mathbb{F}$  上的两个线性空间, 若于  $V_1 \rightarrow V_2$  的一个映射  $\sigma$  满足:

$$(1) \sigma(\alpha + \beta) = \sigma(\alpha) + \sigma(\beta) \quad (2) \sigma(\lambda\alpha) = \lambda\sigma(\alpha)$$

则称  $\sigma$  为  $V_1 \rightarrow V_2$  的一个同构映射; 若存在  $V_1 \rightarrow V_2$  的同构映射, 则称  $V_1$  与  $V_2$  同构

$$\text{e.g. } f_n(x) = \{a_0 + a_1x + \dots + a_nx^n \mid a_i \in \mathbb{F}\} \Leftrightarrow (a_0, a_1, \dots, a_n) \in \mathbb{F}^{n+1}$$

### 四 1 同构映射性质 ( $V_1, V_2$ 为空间)

$$(1) \sigma(\alpha_1) = \alpha_2 \quad (2) \sigma(-\alpha) = -\sigma(\alpha) \quad (3) \sigma\left(\sum_{i=1}^m \lambda_i \alpha_i\right) = \sum_{i=1}^m \lambda_i \sigma(\alpha_i)$$

(4)  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$  线性相关(无关)  $\Leftrightarrow \sigma(\alpha_1), \dots, \sigma(\alpha_m)$  线性相关(无关)

(5)  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n$  为  $V_1$  的基  $\Leftrightarrow \sigma(\alpha_1), \dots, \sigma(\alpha_n)$  为  $V_2$  的基

$$(6) V_1 \sim V_2 \Rightarrow \dim V_1 = \dim V_2 \quad \text{实质: 一阶等价关系}$$

等价关系: ①  $V \sim V$

$$\textcircled{2} \quad V \sim V_2 \Leftrightarrow V_2 \sim V$$

$$\textcircled{3} \quad V_1 \sim V_2, V_2 \sim V_3 \Rightarrow V_1 \sim V_3 (\sigma_1, \sigma_2)$$

**定理2**  $V_1$  与  $V_2$  是  $\mathbb{F}$  上线性空间, 则  $V_1$  与  $V_2$  同构  $\Leftrightarrow \dim V_1 = \dim V_2$ .

pf:  $\Rightarrow$  显然

$$\Leftarrow \dim V_1 = n \dim V_2 = n, V_1 \sim \mathbb{F}^n, V_2 \sim \mathbb{F}^n \Rightarrow V_1 \sim V_2$$

e.g. 3 设  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3$  为  $V$  线性无关

 (1) 证明:  $\alpha_1 + \alpha_2, \alpha_2 + \alpha_3, \alpha_3 + \alpha_1$  线性无关

(2) 确定向量组:  $S = \{\alpha_1 - \lambda\alpha_2, \alpha_2 - \lambda\alpha_3, \alpha_3 - \lambda\alpha_1\}$  的秩

pf:  $W = \langle \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3 \rangle \subset V \quad \sigma: W \rightarrow \mathbb{F}^3$

$$\sigma(\alpha_i) = e_i \quad i=1, 2, 3 \quad \sigma(\alpha_1) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad \sigma(\alpha_2) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad \sigma(\alpha_3) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\sigma(\alpha_1 + \alpha_2) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 1 \\ 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad \sigma(\alpha_2 + \alpha_3) = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \sigma(\alpha_3 + \alpha_1) = \begin{pmatrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{or } (\alpha_1 + \alpha_2, \alpha_2 + \alpha_3, \alpha_3 + \alpha_1) \geq (\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \alpha_3) \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \text{det} \neq 0$$

$$\text{D1 rank}(\alpha_1 - \lambda \alpha_2, \alpha_2 - \lambda \alpha_3, \alpha_3 - \lambda \alpha_1) = \text{rank} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \text{rank} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 1 \\ -\lambda & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & -\lambda & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$  线性无关  $\beta_i = \sum_j a_{ij} \alpha_j \quad j=1, \dots, m$

pf:  $\dim \langle \beta_1, \dots, \beta_m \rangle = \text{rank}(A) \quad A = (a_{ij})_{m \times n}$

$$6: V = \langle \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n \rangle \cap F^{\perp} \quad G(\alpha_i) = e_i$$

$$G(\beta_i) = A_i \quad (i=1, 2, \dots, m) \quad (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m) = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) A^T$$

P86 134

P96 1345

2018.11.19

•  $V = W_1 \oplus W_2 \Leftrightarrow V = W_1 + W_2 \quad \text{且} \quad W_1 \cap W_2 = 0 \quad (W_2 \text{ 称为 } W_1 \text{ 的补空间})$

定理3:  $W$  为  $V$  的子空间, 则存在子空间  $W' \subset V$  使  $V = W \oplus W'$

pf: 设  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_r\}$  为  $W$  的一组基, 扩充为  $V$  的一组基  $\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\}$

$$\text{令 } W' = \langle \alpha_{r+1}, \dots, \alpha_n \rangle \quad \text{则 } V = W \oplus W'$$

$$\bigcap_{i=1}^k W_i = \{0\}$$

定义: 迪卡尔积  $W_1, \dots, W_k$  为  $V$  的子空间:  $W_1 \times W_2 \times \dots \times W_k = \{(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_k) \mid \alpha_i \in W_i\}$

加法  $(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_k) + (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_k) = (\alpha_1 + \beta_1, \dots, \alpha_k + \beta_k)$

数乘  $\lambda(\beta_1, \dots, \beta_k) = (\lambda\beta_1, \dots, \lambda\beta_k)$

$$\tilde{W}_i = \{(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_i, \dots, 0) \mid \alpha_i \in W_i\} \subset W_1 \times W_2 \times \dots \times W_k \text{ 子空间}$$

代数角度: 迪卡尔积与直和

意义相同

$$W_1 \times \dots \times W_k = \tilde{W}_1 \oplus \dots \oplus \tilde{W}_k \sim W_1 \oplus W_2 \oplus \dots \oplus W_k$$

$$\tilde{W}_i \xleftarrow{\cong} W_i \quad \alpha_i = (0, \dots, \alpha_i, \dots, 0) \in \tilde{W}_i \rightarrow \alpha_i \in W_i$$



$$\Rightarrow \dim(W_1 \times \dots \times W_k) = \dim W_1 + \dots + \dim W_k$$

商空间  $V/W$  为  $V$  的子空间，一种等价关系  
 $\alpha \sim \beta \pmod{W} \Leftrightarrow \alpha - \beta \in W$  (称模  $W$  同余)

$\Rightarrow$  等价关系，将  $V$  中元素分类

$$\text{与 } \bar{\alpha} \text{ 固余类: } \bar{\alpha} := \{\alpha + y \mid y \in W\} = \alpha + W$$

$$V/W := \{\bar{\alpha} \mid \alpha \in V\} \leftarrow \text{所有类构成集合}$$

· 定义运算(集合间):  $\bar{\alpha} + \bar{\beta} := \overline{\alpha + \beta}$   $\lambda \bar{\alpha} = \overline{\lambda \alpha}$

有效性证明: 若  $\alpha' \in \bar{\alpha}$   $\beta' \in \bar{\beta}$   $\bar{\alpha} + \bar{\beta} \supseteq \overline{\alpha' + \beta'}$

$$\alpha' - \alpha \in W, \beta' - \beta \in W$$

$$\Rightarrow (\alpha' + \beta') - (\alpha + \beta) \in W \Rightarrow \overline{\alpha' + \beta'} = \overline{\alpha + \beta}$$

Ex. 1  $V = \mathbb{R}^2$   $W = \{(x_1, 0) \mid x_1 \in \mathbb{R}\}$   $\alpha \equiv \beta \pmod{W} \Leftrightarrow (x_1 - x_2, y_1 - y_2) \in W$

$\bar{\alpha} = (x_1, y_1)$   $\bar{\beta} = (x_2, y_2)$   $\bar{\alpha} + \bar{\beta} = \{(x'_1, y_1 + y_2) \mid x'_1 \in \mathbb{R}\}$   $\lambda \bar{\alpha} = \{(x'_1, \lambda y_1) \mid x'_1 \in \mathbb{R}\}$

该算子满足  $\bar{\alpha} + \bar{\beta} = \bar{\beta} + \bar{\alpha}$  和  $\lambda(\bar{\alpha} + \bar{\beta}) = \lambda \bar{\alpha} + \lambda \bar{\beta}$

$$V = W \oplus W^\perp \quad \text{且 } W^\perp \subseteq V/W \quad \bar{\alpha} \sim \bar{\alpha} \quad \text{商空间与辅空间是一回事}$$

$$\dim(V/W) = \dim W^\perp = \dim V - \dim W$$

# 第4 线性映射及其矩阵表示

· 矩阵的几何意义 线性映射  $F^n \rightarrow F^m$   $A = (a_{ij})_{m \times n}$   $y = AX$   $X \in F^n$   $y \in F^m$

线性映射  $\Delta$ : 直线  $\rightarrow$  直线 平行  $\rightarrow$  平行  
 代数:  $\mathcal{A}(\alpha + \beta) = \mathcal{A}\alpha + \mathcal{A}\beta$   $\mathcal{A}(\lambda\alpha) = \lambda\mathcal{A}\alpha$

向量与线性映射: 同构为特殊线性映射

定理 1  $U, V$  为线性空间,  $\mathcal{A}$  为  $U$  到  $V$  的线性映射, 如果:  $\mathcal{A}(\lambda\alpha + \mu\beta) = \lambda\mathcal{A}\alpha + \mu\mathcal{A}\beta$

线性映射性质:

$$1) \mathcal{A}(0) = 0 \quad 2) \mathcal{A}\left(\frac{1}{2}\lambda\alpha_i\right) = \frac{1}{2}\lambda\mathcal{A}(\alpha_i)$$

3)  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$  线性相关  $\Rightarrow \mathcal{A}\alpha_1, \dots, \mathcal{A}\alpha_m$  线性相关 (\*) 可逆性

$\mathcal{A}: U \rightarrow V$  线性映射  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  为  $U$  的一组基  $\{\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m\}$  为  $V$  的一组基

$$\boxed{\mathcal{A}(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) = (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m) A} \quad A = (a_{ij})_{m \times n} \quad \mathcal{A} \leftrightarrow A$$

$\{\tilde{\alpha}_1, \dots, \tilde{\alpha}_n\}$  为  $U$  的一组基  $(\tilde{\alpha}_1, \dots, \tilde{\alpha}_n) = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) P$  (\*) 可逆

$\{\tilde{\beta}_1, \dots, \tilde{\beta}_m\}$   $V$   $(\tilde{\beta}_1, \dots, \tilde{\beta}_m) = (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m) P^{-1}$  (\*) 可逆

$$\mathcal{A}(\tilde{\alpha}_1, \dots, \tilde{\alpha}_n) = (\tilde{\beta}_1, \dots, \tilde{\beta}_m) \tilde{A}$$

$$\Rightarrow \mathcal{A}((\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n)Q) = (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m) P^{-1} \tilde{A}$$

$$= \mathcal{A}(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n)Q = (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m) P^{-1} \tilde{A} = (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m) A Q$$

$\Rightarrow \tilde{A} = P A Q \sim$  矩阵的相似关系 相似: 同样的线性变形在不同基下的表现

定理 2  $A$  为  $U$  到  $V$  的线性映射,  $A$  在不同基下的矩阵彼此相似 反之亦是

Ex.  $\mathcal{A}(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) = (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m) \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$   $\xrightarrow{r = \text{rank}(A)} A$  定义秩

$$\Leftrightarrow \begin{cases} \mathcal{A}\alpha_i = \beta_i \quad (i=1, \dots, r) \\ \mathcal{A}\alpha_i = 0 \quad (i=r+1, \dots, n) \end{cases}$$

$$\mathcal{A}\alpha_i = 0 \quad (i=r+1, \dots, n)$$

A:  $U \rightarrow V$  线性映射  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  为  $U$  的基  $\{\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m\}$  为  $V$  的基

$$A(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) = (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m) A \quad A \in F^{m \times n}$$

$$A \in A$$

$$\begin{array}{ccc} U & \xrightarrow{A} & V \\ \downarrow \sigma_1 & & \uparrow \sigma_2 \\ F^n & \xrightarrow{A} & F^m \end{array}$$

$$x \mapsto Ax$$

$$A(\tilde{\alpha}_1, \dots, \tilde{\alpha}_n) = (\tilde{\beta}_1, \dots, \tilde{\beta}_m) \tilde{A} \quad \tilde{A} = PA$$

$$A: U \rightarrow V \text{ 存在 } \{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\} \text{ 及 } \{\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m\} \text{ st. } A(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) = (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m) \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$r = r(A) = r(\tilde{A})$$

$\mathcal{A} B: U \rightarrow V$  线性映射

$$\text{定义 } (\mathcal{A} + \mathcal{B})(\alpha) := \mathcal{A}\alpha + \mathcal{B}\alpha \quad \forall \alpha \in U \quad (\lambda \mathcal{A})(\alpha) := \lambda \mathcal{A}(\alpha)$$

$\mathcal{A} + \mathcal{B}, \lambda \mathcal{A}$  为  $U \rightarrow V$  线性映射

$L(U, V) = \{\mathcal{A}: U \rightarrow V \text{ 线性映射}\}$  构成线性空间

向量加法满足

$$\text{定理 2 } \dim U = n \quad \dim V = m \quad \dim L(U, V) = mn$$

证明:  $L(U, V) \cong F^{mn}$  (矩阵  $\Leftrightarrow$  映射)

取  $U$  的一组基  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$

$V$ :  $\{\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m\}$

$$A(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) = (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m) A$$

$$G: L(U, V) \rightarrow F^{mn} \quad G(A) = A \quad G(\mathcal{A} + \mathcal{B}) = A + B \quad G(\lambda \mathcal{A}) = \lambda G(\mathcal{A}) \rightarrow \text{满足同构性质}$$

线性映射的复合

$$\mathcal{A}: U \rightarrow V \quad \mathcal{B}: V \rightarrow W \quad \mathcal{B} \circ \mathcal{A} = V \rightarrow W \quad (\mathcal{B} \circ \mathcal{A})(\alpha) = \mathcal{B}(\mathcal{A}(\alpha))$$

$$\mathcal{A}(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) = (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m) A$$

$$\mathcal{B}(\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m) = (\gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_l) B \Rightarrow (\mathcal{B} \circ \mathcal{A})(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) = \mathcal{B}(\mathcal{A}(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n)) = \mathcal{B}(\beta_1, \dots, \beta_m) A = (\gamma_1, \dots, \gamma_l) B A$$

$A: U \rightarrow V$  线性映射  $\Rightarrow$  存在  $B: V \rightarrow U$  线性映射 使  $B \circ A = I_U$  和  $A \circ B = I_V$

称  $A$  为逆,  $B$  为  $A$  的逆映射, 记为  $A^{-1}$

取好映射  $\rightarrow$  行列式问题

定理 3  $A: U \rightarrow V$  为可逆线性映射  $\Leftrightarrow \dim U = \dim V$

$$A(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) = (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n) \Rightarrow A^{-1}(\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n) = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) A^{-1}$$

## §2 像与核

定义 1  $A: U \rightarrow V$  线性映射 称  $\text{Im } A := \{\alpha' \mid \alpha \in U\}$  为  $U$  在  $V$  的像 (Image)  
称  $\text{Ker } A := \{\alpha \in U \mid A\alpha = 0\}$  为  $A$  的核 (kernel)  $\leftarrow$  齐次方程的解

定理 1  $\text{Im } A$  为  $V$  的子空间,  $\text{Ker } A$  为  $U$  的子空间

$$\text{if: } \alpha, \beta \in \text{Im } A \Rightarrow \alpha = A(\alpha') \quad \alpha' \in U \quad \beta = A(\beta') \quad \beta' \in U$$

$$\alpha + \beta = A(\alpha') + A(\beta') = A(\alpha + \beta) \quad \alpha' + \beta' \in U \dots \text{为子空间}$$

$$\alpha, \beta \in \text{Ker } A \quad A(\alpha + \beta) = A\alpha + A\beta = 0 \quad \alpha + \beta \in \text{Ker } A$$

定理 2 设  $A: U \rightarrow V$  线性映射  $r(A) = r \Rightarrow \dim(\text{Im } A) = r$

$$\text{pf: } A: F^n \rightarrow F^m \quad X \mapsto AX \quad r(A) = r(A) = r$$

$$\text{Im } A = \langle A\alpha_1, \dots, A\alpha_n \rangle = \underbrace{\langle A_1, \dots, A_n \rangle}_{\text{列生成空间}}$$

定理 3  $A: U \rightarrow V$  线性映射, 则  $U/\text{Ker } A \cong \text{Im } A$

$$\text{pf: 6: } U/\text{Ker } A \rightarrow \text{Im } A$$

$$\forall \alpha' \in \bar{\alpha} \quad \alpha' = \alpha + v \quad v \in \text{Ker } A$$

$$\bar{\alpha} = \alpha + \text{Ker } A \rightarrow A\bar{\alpha}$$

$$A\bar{\alpha}' = A\alpha + Av = A\alpha$$

$$\beta = \beta + \text{Ker } A \rightarrow A\beta \Rightarrow A(\bar{\alpha} - \beta) = 0 \Rightarrow \bar{\alpha} - \beta \in \text{Ker } A \quad \bar{\alpha} = \bar{\beta}$$

推论  $\dim \ker A = \dim U - \dim \text{Im } A$

定理  $A$  为  $U \rightarrow V$  线性映射，则  $A$  满射  $\Leftrightarrow \text{Im } A = V$

$A$  单射  $\Leftrightarrow \ker A = 0$  ( $0 \rightarrow 0$ )  $\Leftrightarrow \dim U = \dim \text{Im } A$

逆线性映射  $A: U \rightarrow V$  可逆  $\Leftrightarrow$  下列条件中任意两个成立

(1)  $\dim U = \dim V$

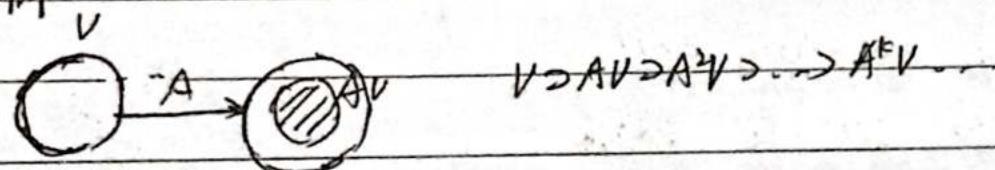
(2)  $\text{Im } A = V$

(3)  $\ker A = 0$

q.1  $A \in F^{n \times n}$  使得  $r(A^k) = r(A^{k+1}) = \dots$

pf:  $n \geq r(A) \geq r(A^2) \geq \dots \geq r(A^k) \geq r(A^{k+1}) \geq \dots \geq 0$

解



思路: 1. 必有一个相等 2. 前面有个相等, 则后面都二 推论 1

2.  $A \in F^{n \times n}$  证  $r(A^k) = r(A^{k+1}) \geq r(A^{k+1}) - r(A^{k+2}) \Rightarrow$  Frobenius 不等式

f.  $V = F^n \quad A: V \rightarrow V \quad X \mapsto AX$

$$W_1 = \text{Im } A^k = A^k V \quad W_2 = \text{Im } A^{k+1} \quad W_3 = \text{Im } A^{k+2}$$

$\checkmark A$  限制在  $W_1$  上

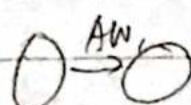
$A|_{W_1} \quad W_1 \rightarrow W_2 \quad \dim(\text{Im } A|_{W_1}) = \dim W_1 - \dim \ker(A|_{W_1})$

$A|_{W_2} \quad W_2 \rightarrow W_3 \quad \dim(\ker(A|_{W_1})) = \dim W_2 - \dim W_3$

$$\Rightarrow \dim(\ker(A|_{W_1})) = \dim W_2 - \dim W_3 = r(A^k) - r(A^{k+1})$$

$$\Rightarrow \dim(\ker(A|_{W_1})) = \dim W_2 - \dim W_3 = r(A^{k+1}) - r(A^{k+2})$$

$\rightarrow$  空间的维数  $\Rightarrow$  相等



### 3.6 线性变换及特征值

$$A^+ \leftrightarrow A^+ \quad A \text{ 可逆} \Leftrightarrow \boxed{\ker A = \{0\}} \Leftrightarrow \text{Im } A = V$$

$$\left. \begin{array}{l} \{ A(\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n) = (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n)B \\ (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n) = (x_1, \dots, x_n)P \end{array} \right\} \Rightarrow B = P^{-1}AP \quad \text{相似为一种等价关系}$$

(Q. (ii) A与B相似的充要条件?

(1) 相似标准型

$$\text{最简单形式: } A = P \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} P^{-1} \Leftrightarrow AP = P \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\Leftrightarrow A(x_1, \dots, x_n) = (x_1, \dots, x_n) \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\Leftrightarrow Ax_i = \lambda_i x_i \quad i=1, 2, \dots, n \quad \leftarrow \text{引出特征值}$$

定义:  $A: V \rightarrow V$  为线性变换 如果存在非零向量及数  $\lambda \in F$  满足  $A\alpha = \lambda\alpha$ , 则称为  $A$  的特征值,  $\alpha$  称为  $\lambda$  对应的特征向量

**注意:** 将该方程线性变换方面反向  $\rightarrow$  特征向量

入为变换性质: 扩伸/压缩

$$\text{基 } (x_1, \dots, x_n): \quad A(x_1, \dots, x_n) = (x_1, \dots, x_n)A$$

$$\alpha = (x_1, \dots, x_n)X \quad A\alpha = \lambda\alpha \Leftrightarrow AX = \lambda X \quad \text{--- 伸缩} \quad \text{从变换到矩阵}$$

$$F = \mathbb{C}$$

$$\cdot \text{ 特殊多项式 } P_A(\lambda) = |\lambda I - A| = (\lambda - \lambda_1)^{n_1} \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_k)^{n_k} \quad n_1 + \cdots + n_k = n$$

性质1  $A$  与  $B$  相似  $P_A(\lambda) = P_B(\lambda)$  从而特征值相似

性质2  $\cdots \cdots$  则对应多项式  $f(A)$  与  $f(B)$  相似  $\underbrace{A \sim B \Rightarrow A^k \sim B^k}_{\text{为推导}}$

$$\text{e.g. } A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad B = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad A^2 = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad B^2 = 0 \quad \times$$

性质3  $\text{Tr}(A) = \lambda_1 + \dots + \lambda_n$   $\det(A) = \lambda_1 \cdots \lambda_n$

$$\begin{aligned} P_A(A) &= \det(\lambda I - A) = \lambda^n (\alpha_{nn} + \dots + \alpha_{nn}) \lambda^{n-1} + \dots + (-1)^n \det A \\ &= (\lambda - \lambda_1) \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_n) \end{aligned}$$

(2) 例 2. 某一特征值为 0  $\rightarrow$  阵维不可逆)

性质4  $A = \begin{pmatrix} B & D \\ 0 & C \end{pmatrix}$   $P_A(I) = P_B(I) P_C(I)$

性质5. (Cauchy-Hamilton)  $\boxed{P_A(A) = 0}$  . 算法代入多项式

proof:  $(\lambda I - A)(\lambda I - A)^* = \det(\lambda I - A)$  均发

$$(\lambda I - A)(\lambda^{n-1} B_{n-1} + \dots + \lambda B_1 + B_0) = P_A(I)$$

$$= \lambda^n B_{n-1} + (B_{n-2} - AB_{n-1}) \lambda^{n-1} + \dots + \lambda (B_0 - AB_1) - AB_0 = (1^n + \alpha_{nn} \lambda^{n-1} + \dots + \alpha_0)$$

$$B_{n-1} = I$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{cases} B_{n-2} - AB_{n-1} = \alpha_{n-1} \Rightarrow A^{n-1} + \alpha_{n-1} A^{n-2} + \dots + \alpha_1 I = 0 \\ \vdots \\ B_0 - AB_1 = \alpha_0 I \\ -AB_0 = \alpha_0 I \end{cases}$$

定义2  $A \in \mathbb{F}^{n \times n}$  如果存在非零多项式  $f(x)$  st.  $f(A) = 0$  称  $f(x)$  为  $A$  的零多项式

次数最低的首一零多项式称  $A$  的最小多项式

性质6 最小多项式存在且唯一

proof:  $S = \{f(x) \in F[x] \mid f(A) = 0\}$  ①  $f, g \in S \Rightarrow f+g \in S$  ②  $f \in S, h \in F[x]$   $hf \in S$

$$S \neq \emptyset = \{d(x)h(x) \mid h(x) \in F[x]\}$$

\* 任何非零多项式为任意多项式  $\times$  最小多项式

$$f(x) = g(x)d(x) + r(x)$$

唯一性由相除除可得

$P(A \cup B) = P(A) + P(B)$

性质7  $A \sim B$  则它们最小多项式相等  $\alpha_{A(W)} = \alpha_{B(W)}$  ( $\alpha_A(1) = \alpha_B(1) = 0$ )  
 $B = PAP^{-1} \Rightarrow \alpha_{B(W)} / \alpha_{A(W)}$  反而相等

性质8  $C \not\sim P_A(W)$  等 $\Leftrightarrow C \not\sim P_A(W)$  的根

$A$  与  $B$  相似  $\Rightarrow P_A(W) = P_B(W)$  例 $\Leftarrow$ :  $A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$   $B = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$   
 $\Rightarrow \alpha_A(1) = \alpha_B(1)$

E.g.1  $A, B \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$  证 $\forall A: AB, BA$  特征值相同  
 $\Leftrightarrow \det(\lambda I - AB) = \det(\lambda I - BA)$

E.g.2  $A \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$   $P_A(W) = (\lambda - \lambda_1)^{m_1} \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_k)^{m_k}$  若  $A$  可对角化, 求  $A$  的最小多项式  
解.  $A - P \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1^{m_1} & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \lambda_k^{m_k} \end{pmatrix} P^{-1} \quad f(A)P \begin{pmatrix} f(\lambda_1)I^{m_1} & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & f(\lambda_k)I^{m_k} \end{pmatrix} P^{-1} = 0$

$f(A) = 0 \Rightarrow f(\lambda_i) = 0 \quad i=1, 2, \dots, k$

$\Rightarrow f(A) = (\lambda - \lambda_1) \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_k) g(x) \quad \therefore \alpha_{A(W)} = (\lambda - \lambda_1) \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_k)$  满足题意

P330

2 3 4 8

P340

4 5

$A \sim B$  则特征多项式不变  $p_{AB} = p_A(\lambda)$

$$\det(\lambda I - A) = \det(A) \Rightarrow \text{Tr}(\lambda I - A) = \text{Tr}(A) ? \quad A, B \text{ 不同}$$

相似只变量 (ps: 相似不变量相同  $\rightarrow$  相似)

► 相似标准型, ①  $A \sim B$  充要条件? ② 标准型

$A \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$   $A$  相似于对角阵充要条件?

定义 4 设  $V \rightarrow V$  线性变换  $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$  为  $A$  的特征值, 称  $V_A = \{x \in V \mid Ax = \lambda x\}$  为  $A$  关于  $\lambda$  的特征空间, 记为  $V_\lambda$

称  $\dim V_\lambda$  为  $A$  的  $\lambda$  重数 (线性无关向量个数)

同理矩阵  $A$  中设  $V_\lambda = \{x \in \mathbb{C}^n \mid Ax = \lambda x\}$ ,  $A \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$ ,  $\lambda$  的特征子空间...  $\lambda$  重数)

命题 1 设  $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_s$  为  $A$  的  $s$  个不同特征值, 则  $V_1 + \dots + V_s$  为直和

反证法:  $0 = V_1 + V_2 + \dots + V_s$   $V_i \in V_{\lambda_i}$  下证  $V_i = 0$

$$\because 0 = Av_1 + Av_2 + \dots + Av_s = \lambda_1 v_1 + \dots + \lambda_s v_s \stackrel{XA}{=} \lambda_1^2 v_1 + \dots + \lambda_s^2 v_s$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{vmatrix} 1 & \dots & 1 \\ \lambda_1 & \lambda_2 & \dots \\ \lambda_1^m & \lambda_2^m & \dots & \lambda_s^m \end{vmatrix} \begin{vmatrix} v_1 \\ v_2 \\ \vdots \\ v_s \end{vmatrix} = 0 \Rightarrow \begin{cases} v_1 = 0 \\ \vdots \\ v_s = 0 \end{cases} \text{ Vandermonde } \neq 0$$

#

$$P_{AV} = (\lambda - \lambda_1)^m \cdots$$

命题 2 设  $A \sim B$  线性变换  $\lambda \in \mathbb{C}$  为特征值, 则  $A$  的  $\lambda$  重数  $\leq B$  的  $\lambda$  重数

proof: 设  $\lambda_0$  为  $A$  的一个特征值, 则  $\lambda_0$  为  $B$  的一个特征值

将  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m$  扩充为  $B$  的一组基  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n$ ,  $A\alpha_i = \lambda_0 \alpha_i$ ,  $i=1, \dots, m$ .

$$A(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_0 & & & \\ & \ddots & & \\ & & \lambda_0 & \\ 0 & & & A_{22} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$P_{AV} = (\lambda - \lambda_0)^m (\det(\lambda - A_{22}))^{n-m}$$

代数重数至少为  $m$

#

定理  $\forall V \rightarrow V$  线性变换  $\dim V = n \quad P(A) = (\lambda - \lambda_1)^{m_1} \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_s)^{m_s} \quad m_i = \dim V_{\lambda_i}$

则下列命题等价:

III A 可对角化

IV A 有 n 个线性无关特征向量

$$V = V_1 \oplus V_2 \oplus \cdots \oplus V_n \quad (1) m_i = n_i \quad i=1, \dots, s$$

V A 的最小多项式无重根

$$\rho = (x_1, \dots, x_n)$$

$$\text{proof: III} \quad A = P \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \lambda_s \end{pmatrix} P^{-1} \Leftrightarrow AP = P \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \lambda_s \end{pmatrix} \quad A(x_1, \dots, x_n) = (\lambda_1 x_1 + \cdots + \lambda_s x_n)$$

$$\Leftrightarrow Ax_i = \lambda_i x_i \quad (i=1, 2, \dots, n) \quad \text{①} \Leftrightarrow \text{②}$$

$$\text{③} \Leftrightarrow \text{②} \quad \text{③} \Leftrightarrow \text{④} \quad \sum m_i \leq \sum n_i = n \quad \text{③ 成立} \quad \sum m_i = n = \sum n_i$$

VI A 相似于对角阵  $\Rightarrow d_A(\lambda)$  无重根  $d_A(\lambda) = (\lambda - \lambda_1) \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_s)$

设  $d_A(\lambda) = (\lambda - \lambda_1) \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_s) \Rightarrow A$  可相似于对角阵

$$f_i(\lambda) = d_A(\lambda) / (\lambda - \lambda_i) \quad i=1, \dots, s$$

$$\Rightarrow u_1(\lambda), \dots, u_s(\lambda) \text{ st. } u_1(\lambda)f_1(\lambda) + \cdots + u_s(\lambda)f_s(\lambda) = I$$

按 X 矩阵  $u_1(A)f_1(A) + u_2(A)f_2(A) + \cdots + u_s(A)f_s(A) = I$

$$\forall \alpha \in V \quad \underbrace{u_1(A)f_1(A)\alpha}_{{\in} V_1} + \cdots + \underbrace{u_s(A)f_s(A)\alpha}_{{\in} V_s} = \alpha + \cdots + \alpha \quad \text{视为直和}$$

$$\Rightarrow V = V_1 \oplus V_2 \oplus \cdots \oplus V_s$$

故得证

$$(A - \lambda I) \alpha_1 = u_1(A)(A - \lambda_1) f_1(A) \alpha_1 \Rightarrow u_1(A)d_A(A)\alpha_1 = 0 \Rightarrow (A - \lambda_1) \alpha_1 = 0 \quad A\alpha_1 = \lambda_1 \alpha_1$$

$\alpha_1$  为  $A$  特征向量

BV I  $A \in F^{n \times n}$  且满足  $A^2 = I$  证明:  $A$  相似于  $\begin{pmatrix} I^n & 0 \\ 0 & -I^{n-n} \end{pmatrix}$

proof: 1)  $A = I$  或  $A = -I$  满足  $A \neq \pm I$

$d_A(\lambda) = \lambda^2 - 1 = (\lambda - 1)(\lambda + 1)$  无重根  $\Rightarrow A$  相似于对角阵

$$2) V = V_1 \oplus V_2 \quad V_1 = \{x \in F^n \mid (A - I)x = 0\} \quad V_2 = \{x \in F^n \mid (A + I)x = 0\}$$

$$\dim V = \dim V_1 + \dim V_2 = n$$

问题的转化

$$\Leftrightarrow n - r(A - I) + n - r(A + I) = n \Leftrightarrow r(A - I) + r(A + I) = n$$

B12  $A \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1 & \cdots & \alpha_n \\ \alpha_n & \cdots & \alpha_1 \\ \alpha_2 & \cdots & \alpha_1 \end{pmatrix}$  求证 A 相似于对角阵

$$= \alpha_1 I + \alpha_2 k + \alpha_3 k^2 + \cdots + \alpha_n k^{n-1} \quad k = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & 0 \\ \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\rho_k(\lambda) = \lambda^n - 1 \quad \text{根 } 1, \omega, \dots, \omega^{n-1} \quad \omega = \cos \frac{2\pi}{n} + i \sin \frac{2\pi}{n}$$

$$\therefore k = P \underbrace{\begin{pmatrix} 1 & \omega & \cdots & \omega^{n-1} \end{pmatrix}}_{P^{-1}} P^{-1}$$

$$\therefore |A - f_k| = P \begin{pmatrix} f_{11} & & \\ & f_{22} & \\ & & f_{nn} \end{pmatrix} P^{-1} \Rightarrow \det(A - f_{11} - \cdots - f_{nn})$$

之前求  $\det$  做法：构造 P (D 项)

B13  $A, B \in F^{n \times n}$  均可对角化，且  $AB = BA$  证  $AB, BA$  可同时对角化  
可直接

proof:  $A = P_1 \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 I^{(m_1)} & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \lambda_s I^{(m_s)} \end{pmatrix} P_1^{-1} \quad AB = BA$   
 $\lambda_i$  对角阵

$$\Leftrightarrow P_1 \Lambda P_1^{-1} B = B P_1 \Lambda P_1^{-1} \Leftrightarrow \Lambda P_1^{-1} B P_1 = P_1^{-1} B P_1 \Lambda$$

问题转化为：

$$\Lambda = \text{diag}(\lambda_1 I^{(m_1)}, \dots, \lambda_s I^{(m_s)}) \quad B_1 \text{ 可对角化}$$

$$B \text{ 分块 } B_1 = (B_{ij})_{3 \times 3} \quad \text{由 } \Lambda B_1 = B_1 \Lambda \Rightarrow B_1 = \text{diag}(B_{11}, B_{22}, \dots, B_{ss})$$

$B_1$  可对角化  $\Leftrightarrow$  所有  $B_{ii}$  可对角化

$$\Leftrightarrow \forall \alpha_i \text{ s.t. } (\alpha_i^\top B_{ii} \alpha_i) = D_{ii} \text{ -- 对角阵}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1 & & \alpha_s \end{pmatrix}^\top \begin{pmatrix} B_{11} & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & B_{ss} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1 & & \alpha_s \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} D_{11} & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & D_{ss} \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1 & & \alpha_s \end{pmatrix}^\top \Lambda \begin{pmatrix} \alpha_1 & & \alpha_s \end{pmatrix} = D$$

B14  $A, B \in F^{n \times n}$  且 A 与 B 无公共特征值 证  $\forall X \in F^{n \times n} \rightarrow AX - XB \neq 0$

proof:  $\ker \sqrt{A} = \{0\} \Leftrightarrow AX - XB = 0 \Rightarrow X = 0 \quad \checkmark$  断言推

$$AX = XB \quad A(AX) = AXB = XB^2 \Rightarrow A^k X = X B^k \Rightarrow \{f(A)X = Xf(B)\}$$

$$\therefore 0 = \det(A)X = X\det(B) \quad \text{再说明 } (A|B) \text{ 可逆}$$

(数学归纳法)

定理2  $A \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$  则  $A$  相似于上三角阵

proof:  $AX_1 = AX_1$        $A(x_1, \dots, x_n) = (x_1, \dots, x_n) \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & * \\ 0 & * \end{pmatrix}$  (ii)

定理3  $A \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$   $\rho(A) = (\lambda_1 - \lambda_2) \cdots (\lambda_1 - \lambda_s)^{ns}$ , 则  $A$  相似于

$\text{diag}(A_{11}, A_{22}, \dots, A_{ss})$        $A_{ii} = \begin{pmatrix} x_i & * \\ * & x_i \end{pmatrix} \in \mathbb{C}^{ns \times ns}$  准上三角阵?

proof: 归纳法  $s=1$   $A \sim \begin{pmatrix} x_1 & * \\ 0 & \lambda_1 \end{pmatrix}$  该结论对  $s=1$  成立

$s:$   $A \sim \begin{array}{c|c} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ \hline A_{21} & A_{22} \end{array} \quad | \quad A_{ss}$  可找到矩阵  $S$ :  $A \sim \begin{array}{c|c} A_{11} & * \\ \hline A_{21, ss} & 0 \end{array} := \begin{pmatrix} D_{11} & D_{12} \\ 0 & D_{22} \end{pmatrix}$

其中  $D_{11}, D_{22}$  都为准对角阵

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & s \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} D_{11} & D_{12} \\ D_{21} & D_{22} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & -s \\ 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} D_{11} - D_{11}s + sD_{22} + D_{12} & D_{12} \\ 0 & D_{22} \end{pmatrix}$$

(无公共特征值 可逆)

选取  $s$  使  $-D_{11}s + sD_{22} + D_{12} = 0$        $\Leftrightarrow \underline{D_{11}s - sD_{22} = D_{12}}$  满足

P344 1.3.4

P352 1.5.7

# 第四章 Jordan 标准型

## §1 Jordan 标准型及其计算

定义  $a \in \mathbb{C}$  称  $m \times m$  阵  $\begin{pmatrix} a & & & \\ & \ddots & & \\ & & a & \\ & & & a_{m \times m} \end{pmatrix}$  为一个 Jordan 块，记为  $J_m(a)$ 。由 Jordan 块构成的标准对角阵  $J = \text{diag}(J_{m_1}(a_1), \dots, J_{m_k}(a_k))$  记为 Jordan 型矩阵。

命题 1  $r((J_m(a) - \lambda I)^k) = \begin{cases} m-k & k \leq m \\ 0 & k > m \end{cases} \quad (J_m(a) - \lambda I)^k X = 0$

命题 2  $J_m(a)$  的特征多项式与最小多项式均为  $(\lambda - a)^m$  且  $\dim V_\lambda = 1$

proof:  $\lambda^m | \det(J_m(a) - \lambda I) = (\lambda - a)^m$   $\leftarrow$  由化零多项式性质

定理 1  $A \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$   $P_A(\lambda) = (\lambda - \lambda_1)^{n_1} (\lambda - \lambda_2)^{n_2} \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_s)^{n_s}$  ( $\lambda_i$  均不相等)  $\sum n_i = n$

$\Leftrightarrow A$  相似于 Jordan 标准型  $J = \text{diag}(J_1, J_2, \dots, J_s)$

$J_i = \text{diag}(j_{i1}, j_{i2}, \dots, j_{im_i}) \quad m_i = \dim V_{\lambda_i} \quad J_{ij} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_i & & & \\ & \lambda_i & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ & & & \lambda_i \end{pmatrix}_{m_i \times m_i}$   
 且  $J$  在不计较 Jordan 块次序下是唯一的  $j_{i1} = j_{i2} = \dots = j_{im_i}$   $\xrightarrow{\text{相加为 } n_i}$

key:  $J$  为化零多项式

推论 1  $\det(A - \lambda I) = (\lambda - \lambda_1)^{n_1} (\lambda - \lambda_2)^{n_2} \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_s)^{n_s}$

$$\hookrightarrow J = \begin{pmatrix} J_{11} & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & J_{11} \end{pmatrix} \quad (J_{11} - \lambda_1 I)^k = \begin{pmatrix} (\lambda_1 - \lambda_1)^k & & \\ & (\lambda_2 - \lambda_1)^k & \\ & & \ddots & \\ & & & (\lambda_{1m_1} - \lambda_1)^k \end{pmatrix} = 0$$

即  $n_1$  重根 = 阶数

推论 2:  $A$  相似于对角阵  $\Leftrightarrow j_{ij} = 1 \Leftrightarrow m_i = n_i \quad i=1, 2, \dots, s$

$$\Leftrightarrow \det(A - \lambda I) = (\lambda - \lambda_1) \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_s)$$

推论 3:  $A \sim B \Leftrightarrow A, B$  有相同 Jordan 标准型  $\Leftrightarrow$

(1) 特征多项式相同; (2) 每个特征值的特征子空间维数: 相同

(3) 对每个  $\lambda_j$ ,  $\{j_{ij}\}_{i=1}^{m_j}$  相同

E.g. 1  $A = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & 1 \\ 2 & -2 & 2 \\ 3 & -6 & 5 \end{pmatrix}$  求  $A$  的 Jordan 标准型。

$$r(P^{-1}AP - 2I) = r(A - 2I) = 1 \dots$$

Ex.2  $A = \begin{pmatrix} -2 & 4 & 10 & 2 \\ 4 & 6 & 1 & -10 \\ 0 & 0 & 3 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 3 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$  求  $A$  的 Jordan 标准型

解:  $P_A(\lambda) = (\lambda - 2)^2 (\lambda - 3)^2$   $J = \begin{pmatrix} J_1 & \\ & J_2 \end{pmatrix}$   $J_1 \in \mathbb{C}^{2 \times 2}$   $J_2 \in \mathbb{C}^{3 \times 3}$

$$J_1 = J_{11} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & \\ & 2 \end{pmatrix} \quad J_{12} = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & \\ & 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad J_2 = J_{21} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & & \\ & 3 & \\ & & 3 \end{pmatrix} \quad J_{22} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & & \\ & 3 & \\ & & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$r(J-2I) = r\left(\begin{matrix} J_1-2I & \\ & J_2-2I \end{matrix}\right) = r(J_1-2I) + r(J_2-2I) = 3 + r(J_1-2I)$$

$$r(J-3I) = 2 + r(J_2-3I)$$

$$\Rightarrow r(J-2I) = r(A-2I) = 4$$

$$r(J-3I) = r(A-3I) = 3$$

$$\Rightarrow J = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & & \\ & 2 & \\ & & 3 \\ & & & 3 \\ & & & & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

• key:  $\#$  rank 特性

一般计算

$$P_A(\lambda) = (\lambda - \lambda_1)^{n_1} \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_s)^{n_s}$$

$$r_k^i := \text{rank } (A - \lambda_i I)^k - \text{rank } (J - \lambda_i I)^k$$

$$J = \begin{pmatrix} J_1 & & \\ & J_2 & \\ & & \ddots & J_s \end{pmatrix} \quad J_i \in \mathbb{C}^{n_i \times n_i} \quad J_i = \begin{pmatrix} J_{ii} & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & J_{im_i} \end{pmatrix}$$

设  $J_i$  中含  $p$  个 Jordan 块  $\delta_p^t$  且  $\sum_{p=1}^{n_i} p \delta_p^t = n_i$

$$r_k^i = \text{rank } (J - \lambda_i I)^k = \sum_{j=1}^s \text{rank } (J_j - \lambda_i I)^k = \text{rank } (J_i - \lambda_i I)^k + n - n_i$$

$$\Rightarrow r((J_i - \lambda_i I)^k) = \sum_{p=1}^{n_i} (p-1) \delta_p^i = \sum_{p=k+1}^{n_i} (p-k) \delta_p^i + n - n_i = k^i$$

$$= \sum_{p=k+1}^{n_i} (p+k-1) \delta_p^i + n - n_i = k^i$$

$$\therefore \sum_{p=k+1}^{n_i} \delta_p^i = r_{k+1}^i - r_k^i = \alpha_k \Rightarrow \boxed{\delta_k = \alpha_k - \alpha_{k+1}} \uparrow \text{反向}$$

Eq.3  $A = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \alpha \end{pmatrix}_{n \times n}$  求 Jordan 标准型

Solve:

$$PA(\lambda) = (\lambda - \alpha)^n$$

$$\text{rk} = \text{rank}(A - \alpha I)^k = \begin{cases} n-2k & 2k \leq n \\ 0 & 2k > n \end{cases}$$

$$(1) n=2m \quad \alpha_k = r_{k+1} - r_k = \begin{cases} 2 & k=m \\ 0 & k \neq m+1 \end{cases} \quad s_k = \alpha_k - \alpha_{k+1} = \begin{cases} 2 & k=m \\ 0 & k \neq m \end{cases}$$

$$\therefore J = \begin{pmatrix} J_m(\alpha) & \\ & J_{m+1}(\alpha) \end{pmatrix} \quad m=\frac{n}{2}$$

$$(2) n=2m+1 \quad J = \begin{pmatrix} J_m(\alpha) & \\ & J_{m+1}(\alpha) \end{pmatrix}$$

Eq.4  $A = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & -2 & 1 \\ 2 & -2 & 2 \\ 3 & 6 & 5 \end{pmatrix}$  求 P st.  $P^{-1}AP = J = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & \\ -2 & 2 & \\ & & 3 \end{pmatrix}$

解:  $AP = PJ$

$$\exists P = (X_1, X_2, X_3) \quad A(X_1, X_2, X_3) \cdot (X_1, X_2, X_3) = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & \\ -2 & 2 & \\ & & 3 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{cases} (A-2I)X_1 = 0 \\ (A-2I)X_2 = X_1 \\ (A-2I)X_3 = 0 \end{cases} \quad \begin{cases} (A-2I)X_2 = 0 \\ (A-2I)X_3 = X_1 \\ (A-2I)X_3 = 0 \end{cases} \quad \begin{cases} X_2 = (1, 0, 0)^T \\ X_1 = (1, 1, 3)^T \\ X_3 = (-1, 0, 1)^T \end{cases}$$

$X_i \in \text{ker}(A-2I)^k$   
又令为特征向量

Eq.5  $\begin{cases} \frac{dx}{dt} = 3x - 2y + z \\ \frac{dy}{dt} = x - 2y + 2z \\ \frac{dz}{dt} = 3x - 6y + 5z \end{cases} \quad \exists X = \begin{pmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{pmatrix} \quad \frac{dX}{dt} = AX \quad A = PJP^{-1}$

$$\begin{cases} \frac{dx}{dt} = 3x - 2y + z \\ \frac{dy}{dt} = x - 2y + 2z \\ \frac{dz}{dt} = 3x - 6y + 5z \end{cases} \quad \exists X = P\tilde{X} \Rightarrow \frac{dX}{dt} = P\tilde{X} \Rightarrow \begin{cases} \frac{d\tilde{x}}{dt} = 2\tilde{x} + \tilde{y} \\ \frac{d\tilde{y}}{dt} = \tilde{y} \\ \frac{d\tilde{z}}{dt} = 2\tilde{z} \end{cases}$$

Eq.6  $A = J$  证:  $A^2 = J^2 = J^{nr}$

设  $A$  Jordan 标准型  $J \quad A^2 = J \Rightarrow J^2 = J$

$$J = \text{diag}(J_{ij})$$

$$J_{ij} = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1^2 & 2\lambda_1 & & & \\ & \ddots & \ddots & & \\ & & \ddots & \ddots & \\ & & & 2\lambda_{nr} & \\ & & & & \lambda_n^2 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$J_{ij}^2 = I \Rightarrow \lambda_i^2 = 1 \Rightarrow \lambda_i = \pm 1$$

# 方法总结

1. 找  $P$  st.  $P^TAP$  简单  $A = \text{diag}(A_{11}, \dots, A_{nn})$   $A_{ii} = (x_i, \cdot)$

2. LDU 方法  $A$  相似于对角阵  $\Leftrightarrow V = V_1 \oplus \dots \oplus V_N$

$$V = V_1 \oplus \dots \oplus V_N$$

P371 3(1) 14)

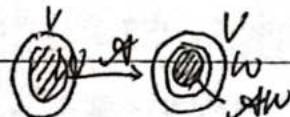
4.5

3. 因数方法  $A$  对称  $(x^T - A)$

2018.12.5

## 3.2 根子空间分解

定义 1  $A: V \rightarrow V$  线性变换  $W \subset V$  子空间 如果  $AW \subset W$  称  $W$  为  $V$  关于  $A$  的不变子空间



e.g. ①.  $V$ . 平子空间

Im. A. Ker. A.  $V_A$  特征子空间

定理 1  $A: V \rightarrow V$  为线性变换, 则  $V$  的关于  $A$  的有限个不变子空间之和为  $V$  的不变子空间

proof:  $W = W_1 + \dots + W_r$   $W_i$  为不变子空间

$$\forall v \in W \quad v = v_1 + v_2 + \dots + v_r \quad \forall v_i \in W_i \quad v_i = a_i v_i \in W_1 + W_2 + \dots + W_r = W \quad \#$$

定理 2 设  $W$  为  $V$  的关于  $A$  的不变子空间 设  $\{v_1, \dots, v_r\}$  为  $W$  的基  $M_2 = \{v_1, \dots, \underline{v_r}, \dots, v_n\}$

为  $V$  的一组基, 则  $A$  在  $M_2$  下的矩阵为准上三角阵

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \forall v_i = a_{11}v_1 + \dots + a_{1r}v_r \in W \\ \vdots \\ \forall v_r = a_{r1}v_1 + \dots + a_{rr}v_r \\ \forall v_n = a_{n1}v_1 + \dots + a_{nr}v_n \end{array} \right.$$

$$\forall (v_1, \dots, v_n) = (v_1, \dots, v_r) \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ & \ddots \\ 0 & A_{rr} \end{pmatrix} \quad A \in F^{V \times V}$$

对角形, 先以右向量

定理 3  $A: V \rightarrow V$  线性变换,  $W_1$  与  $W_2$  均为  $V$  的关于  $A$  的不变子空间, 且  $V = W_1 \oplus W_2$ , 设  $\{v_1, \dots, v_n\}$  为  $W_1$  的基,  $\{v_{n+1}, \dots, v_m\}$  为  $W_2$  的基, 则  $A$  在  $\{v_1, \dots, v_m\}$  下的矩阵为准对角阵

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \forall v_1 = a_{11}v_1 + \dots + a_{1r}v_r \\ \forall v_r = a_{r1}v_1 + \dots + a_{rr}v_r \\ \forall v_{r+1} = a_{(r+1)1}v_1 + \dots + a_{(r+1)r}v_r \end{array} \right.$$

推论  $V = W_1 \oplus \dots \oplus W_s$   $W_i$  为不变子空间, 该  $W_i$  的一组基为  $M_i$ , 则  $A$  在  $M_1 M_2 \dots M_s$  下的矩阵为准对角阵, 反之亦然

$$\ker(A - \lambda_i I) \subset \ker(A - \lambda_i I)^2 \subset \dots \subset \ker(A - \lambda_i I)^k = \ker(A - \lambda_i I)^{k+1} \leftarrow \text{渐进性}\newline \text{-定会停止}$$

$\Rightarrow$  令  $\lambda_0$  为  $A$  的特征值, 称  $W_{\lambda_0} = \bigcap_{k=1}^{\infty} \ker(A - \lambda_0 I)^k = \{x \in V \mid \exists k, (A - \lambda_0 I)^k x = 0\}$  为  $A$  的根子空间,  $x \in W_{\lambda_0}$  称为根向量 st.  $(A - \lambda_0 I)^k x = 0$  成立的最小正整数  $k$  称为  $x$  的次数。  $W_{\lambda_0} = \bigcap_{k=0}^{\infty} \ker(A - \lambda_0 I)^k = (A - \lambda_0 I)^{k_0}$

定理 4 设  $P_A(\lambda) = (\lambda - \lambda_1)^{n_1} \dots (\lambda - \lambda_s)^{n_s}$  则

$$W_{\lambda_0} \text{ 为不变子空间, 且 } W_{\lambda_0} = \ker(A - \lambda_0 I)^{n_0}, \dim W_{\lambda_0} = n_0$$

$$(1) P_A|_{W_{\lambda_0}}(\lambda) = (\lambda - \lambda_0)^{n_0}$$

$$(2) \forall \ker(A - \lambda_i I) \subset \dots \subset \ker(A - \lambda_i I)^{k_i} = \ker(A - \lambda_i I)^{k_i+1} = \dots =$$

$$(3) A|_{W_{\lambda_0}}(N) = (\lambda - \lambda_0)^{k_0}$$

proof:  $A$  在一组基下的矩阵

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_0 & & * \\ 0 & \lambda_1 & * \\ 0 & 0 & \lambda_2 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \lambda_s \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ 0 & A_{22} \end{pmatrix} \quad k_0 \geq n_0$$

$$(A - \lambda_0 I)^k = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & * \\ 0 & \lambda_1 \\ 0 & 0 & \lambda_2 \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ 0 & 0 & \lambda_s - \lambda_0 I \end{pmatrix}^k = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & * \\ 0 & (A_{22} - \lambda_0 I)^k \end{pmatrix} = -k(A - \lambda_0 I)^{k+1} = \dots =$$

$$\therefore W_{\lambda_0} = \dim \ker(A - \lambda_0 I)^{k_0} \stackrel{\max}{=} n_0$$

$A$  为对角  $\rightarrow$  不变子空间得证

$$(1) \forall (A - \lambda_i I)^{n_i} x = 0 \Rightarrow (A - \lambda_i I)^{n_i} (A x) = 0$$

$$(2) \forall x \in W_i \Rightarrow (A - \lambda_i I)^{n_i} x = 0 \Rightarrow A/x \Rightarrow (A - \lambda_i I)^{n_i} |_{W_i} = 0 \Rightarrow (A|_{W_i} - \lambda_i I)^{n_i} = 0 \quad (\lambda - \lambda_i)^{n_i} \text{ 是 } A|_{W_i} \text{ 的零多项式}$$

(3) 反证法

定理5 设  $P_A(\lambda) = (\lambda - \lambda_1)^{n_1} \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_s)^{n_s}$  则  $V = W_1 \oplus W_2 \cdots \oplus W_s$

$\Leftrightarrow "V 可以分解为一些根子空间的直和" \rightarrow V 可以为准对角阵$

· 推论1...

存在  $V$  的一组基， $A$  在该组基下为准对角阵  $\text{Diag}(A_{11}, A_{22}, \dots, A_{ss})$

· 推论2.  $A \in \mathbb{C}^{mn}$  则  $A$  相似于准对角阵  $\text{Diag}(A_{11}, A_{22}, \dots, A_{ss})$

proof: 1°  $V = W_1 \oplus W_2 \oplus \cdots \oplus W_s$ . 再证明直和

引进  $f_i(\lambda) = \frac{P_A(\lambda)}{(\lambda - \lambda_i)^{n_i}}$   $i=1, \dots, s$  虽然  $f_1, f_2, \dots, f_s$  互素

$W_i \ni \sum u_1, \dots, u_s$  st.  $u_1 f_1 + u_2 f_2 + \cdots + u_s f_s = 0$

$$\Rightarrow u_1(\lambda) f_1(\lambda) + u_2(\lambda) f_2(\lambda) + \cdots + u_s(\lambda) f_s(\lambda) = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow u_1(\lambda) f_1(\lambda) + u_2(\lambda) f_2(\lambda) + \cdots + u_s(\lambda) f_s(\lambda) = 0$$

下要证.  $u_i(\lambda) f_i(\lambda) \in W_i \Leftrightarrow \underbrace{(\lambda - \lambda_i)^{n_i}}_{\lambda - \lambda_i} u_i(\lambda) f_i(\lambda) = 0$

$= u_i(\lambda) \cdot P_A(\lambda) = 0 \rightarrow$  特征多项式=0

$\rightarrow V$  为  $W_i$  的直和

2°  $W_1 + \cdots + W_s$  为直和

$$\Leftrightarrow \alpha_1 + \cdots + \alpha_s = 0 \quad \alpha_i \in W_i \Rightarrow \alpha_1 = \alpha_2 = \cdots = \alpha_s = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow f_i(\lambda) \alpha_1 + \cdots + f_i(\lambda) \alpha_s = 0 \Rightarrow f_i(\lambda) \alpha_i = 0 \quad \text{其余乘完都为0}$$

$f_i$  与  $(\lambda - \lambda_i)^{n_i}$  互素

$$\exists v_1(\lambda), v_2(\lambda) \text{ st. } v_1 f_i + v_2 (\lambda - \lambda_i)^{n_i} = 1$$

$$\Rightarrow \underbrace{v_1(\lambda) f_i(\lambda)}_{=0} \alpha_i + v_2(\lambda) \underbrace{f_i(\lambda - \lambda_i)^{n_i} \alpha_i}_{=0} = 0 \Rightarrow \alpha_i = 0 \quad \#$$

$\lambda: V \rightarrow V$  线性变换  $P_\lambda(\lambda) = (\lambda - \lambda_1)^{m_1} \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_s)^{m_s}$

$V = W_{\lambda_1} \oplus W_{\lambda_2} \oplus \cdots \oplus W_{\lambda_s}$

$$W_{\lambda_i} = \ker((\lambda - \lambda_i)^{m_i}) = \{ \alpha \in V \mid (\lambda - \lambda_i)^{m_i} \alpha = 0 \}$$

$$\dim W_{\lambda_i} = n_i \quad A|_{W_{\lambda_i}} \sim (\lambda - \lambda_i)^{m_i}$$

$\Rightarrow V$  中存在一组基， $\alpha$  在该组基下矩阵  $A \rightsquigarrow \text{Diag}(A_{11}, A_{22}, \dots, A_{ss})$

$$A_{ii} \in \mathbb{C}^{n_i \times n_i} \quad B_{ii} = A_{ii} - \lambda_i I = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & * \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad B_{ii}^{m_i} = 0 \rightarrow \text{幂零矩阵}$$

$$A = P \text{Diag}(A_{11}, \dots, A_{ss}) P^{-1} \quad \text{Jordan 标准型}$$

$$A_{ii} = P_i J_i P_i^{-1} \quad \text{又处理了下}$$

$$\Rightarrow A \rightsquigarrow \text{Diag}(J_1, J_2, \dots, J_s)$$

$$B_{ii} = W_{\lambda_i} \rightarrow W_{\lambda_i} \text{ 幂零变换} \quad \uparrow \text{继续分解}$$

$$W_{\lambda_i} = C_{i1} \oplus C_{i2} \oplus \cdots \oplus C_{ir_i}$$

### 3.3 循环子空间分解

(无限维)

定义  $\lambda: V \rightarrow V$  线性变换  $\alpha \in V$ , 由向量  $\alpha, \lambda\alpha, \dots, \lambda^{s-1}\alpha$  生成的子空间为  $\alpha$  关于  $\lambda$  的循环子空间, 记为  $C$

$$C = \langle \alpha, \lambda\alpha, \lambda^2\alpha, \dots \rangle$$

命题1 循环子空间  $C$  是包含  $\alpha$  的最小不变子空间

$$\text{pf: } \beta = \sum_{i=0}^m \lambda^i \alpha \in C \quad \lambda\beta = \sum_{i=0}^m \lambda^{i+1} \alpha \in C \quad (\text{不变子空间})$$

$C$  为包含  $\alpha$  的不变子空间  $\alpha \in C' \Rightarrow \lambda\alpha \in C' \dots \Rightarrow \lambda^k \alpha \in C'$

$$\Rightarrow C \subseteq C' \quad \stackrel{\text{2. 最小性}}{\square}$$

非 st.  $\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha^{k+1}$  线性无关

$\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha^{k+1}$  线性相关

$$\Rightarrow \alpha^{k+1} = \sum_{i=0}^k a_i \alpha^i \Rightarrow \alpha^{k+1} = \frac{k}{\sum_{i=0}^k a_i} a_i \alpha^i = \frac{k}{\sum_{i=0}^k a_i} a_i \alpha^{k+1} \in \langle \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha^{k+1} \rangle$$

$\Rightarrow C$  不需要无穷多组基，只用  $k+1, \dots, 0$  有限个

$C = \langle \alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha^{k+1} \rangle$  中原推进

$$(\lambda^k - \sum_{i=0}^k a_i \lambda^i) \alpha = 0 \Rightarrow f(\lambda) \alpha = 0 \quad \xrightarrow{\text{特征值}} \quad f(\lambda) = (\lambda^k - \sum_{i=0}^k a_i \lambda^i)$$

定义 2.  $A: V \rightarrow V$  线性变换  $\forall v \in V$  若  $f(A)v = 0$  称  $f(A)$  为  $v$  关于  $A$  的化零多项式

性质：  $f(A)$  为  $A$  的化零多项式  $\Rightarrow \forall v \in V \quad f(A)v = 0$

$f(A)$  为  $v$  的化零多项式  $\Rightarrow$  对指定  $v \quad f(A)v = 0$

度数关系

命题 2.  $f(A)$  为  $v$  化零多项式 则  $\alpha_2(v) | f(A)$ ,  $\alpha_2(v)$  存在唯一 1 证法

$C$  为由  $v$  生成的循环子空间

命题 3.  $A: V \rightarrow V$  线性变换  $\forall v \in V \quad \alpha_2(v) \in A + A^2 + \dots + A^{k-1} + A^k$

(II) ①  $\{\alpha^1, \dots, \alpha^k\}$  为  $C$  的一组基，且  $A|C$  应该组基下矩阵为

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} -a_{k+1} & 1 & 0 \\ -a_{k+2} & 0 & \ddots \\ -a_1 & 0 & \ddots \\ -a_0 & 0 & \cdots & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

②  $A|C$  的特征多项式与最小多项式均为  $\alpha_2(v)$

proof. ① 该存在不全为零的  $a_i$  使  $\alpha^i v = 0$  即  $f(A)v = 0$

$\Rightarrow f(A)$  为  $v$  的化零多项式  $\because \deg f(A) < k$ , 不可能！

$$\alpha_2(v) | f(A) \Rightarrow \alpha^k v = \sum_{i=0}^{k-1} a_i \alpha^i v \in \langle \alpha^1, \dots, \alpha^k \rangle$$

$$\alpha_2(v) = \lambda^k + a_{k-1} \lambda^{k-1} + \dots + a_1 \lambda + a_0 \Rightarrow C = \langle \alpha^1, \alpha^2, \dots, \alpha^{k+1} \rangle \Rightarrow \dim C = k$$

$$A^k \alpha = -\alpha_1 A^{k-1} \alpha_2 - \dots - \alpha_1 \alpha - \alpha_0$$

$$\therefore \alpha_1 A^{k-1} \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_1 \alpha - \alpha_0 \in \text{span}(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_k) \quad \left( \begin{matrix} -\alpha_1 & 1 & \dots & 1 \\ 1 & \ddots & & 1 \\ \vdots & & \ddots & 1 \\ -\alpha_0 & 0 & \dots & 0 \end{matrix} \right)$$

$$\Rightarrow P_{A/C}(x) = P_A(x) = \alpha_0(x)$$

$$\therefore \alpha_{A/C}(x) \mid P_{A/C}(x) = \alpha_0(x)$$

$$\alpha_0(x) \mid \alpha(x) \mid P_{A/C}(x) = \alpha_0(x) \Rightarrow \alpha_{A/C}(x) = \alpha_0(x)$$

A/C 最小多项式

推论 设  $A: V \rightarrow V$  为幂零变换  $\alpha \in V$   $C$  为  $\alpha$  生成的循环子空间

则  $A$  在  $\{\alpha^k \alpha, \dots, \alpha_2 \alpha, \alpha\}$  下矩阵为

proof:  $A^m = 0$   $A^{m+1} \neq 0$   $m$  称为  $A$  的幂次  $\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & & \\ & \ddots & & \\ & & \ddots & 1 \\ & & & 0 \end{pmatrix} = J_F(0)$

$$\Rightarrow \alpha_A(x) = x^m \quad k \leq m$$

定理 1 设  $B: W \rightarrow W$  为幂零变换, 则

$$(1) W = C_1 \oplus C_2 \oplus \dots \oplus C_m \quad C_i \text{ 为循环子空间}$$

(2) 存在  $W$  的一组基,  $B$  在该组基下矩阵为

$$J = \text{diag}(J_{d_1}(0), \dots, J_{d_m}(0))$$

(3)  $A$  为幂零方阵  $\exists J \sim A$

proof: 挑  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m \in V$   $C_i = \langle \alpha_i, B\alpha_1, \dots, B^{d-1}\alpha_i \rangle$

$$\text{st. } W = C_1 \oplus C_2 \oplus \dots \oplus C_m$$

st.  $B^{d_1}\alpha_1, \dots, B^{d_1}\alpha_1$  —— 构成  $W$  的一组基

$$B^{d_1} \neq 0 \quad B^{d_1} = 0 \Rightarrow B^{d_1}\alpha_1 = 0 \quad \alpha_1 \in \ker B^{d_1}$$

$$B^{d_1}\alpha_1 \neq 0 \quad \alpha_1 \notin \ker B^{d_1}$$

$$\therefore \ker B \subset \ker B^2 \subset \dots \subset \ker B^{d_1} \subset \ker B^P = W$$

$$r_k = \dim \ker B^k \quad r_1 < r_2 < \dots < r_p$$

$$\ker B^p = \ker B^{p-1} \oplus U_{p-1} \quad \dim U_{p-1} = r_p - r_{p-1} := \alpha_p$$

ii) 存在  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_{\alpha_p} \in U_{p-1}$  它为一组基

$\alpha_1$	$B\alpha_1$	$\cdots$	$B^{p-1}\alpha_1$
$\vdots$			
$\alpha_{\alpha_p}$	$B\alpha_{\alpha_p}$	$\cdots$	$B^{p-1}\alpha_{\alpha_p}$

$B\alpha_i \in \ker B^p$   
 $B\alpha_{\alpha_p} \in \ker B^{p-1}$

$$\ker B^{p-1} = \ker B^{p-2} \oplus \langle B\alpha_1, \dots, B\alpha_{\alpha_p} \rangle \oplus U_{p-2}$$

iii)  $\alpha_{\alpha_{p+1}}, \dots, \alpha_{\alpha_p} \notin U_{p-2}$  为一组基

$$\ker B^{p-2} = \ker B^{p-3} \oplus \langle B^2\alpha_1, B^2\alpha_2, \dots, B^2\alpha_{\alpha_p} \rangle \oplus \langle B\alpha_{\alpha_{p+1}}, \dots, B\alpha_{\alpha_p} \rangle \oplus U_{p-3}$$

P383

1, 3, 5, 6

Review

$$\mathcal{A}: V \rightarrow V \quad \text{and } V$$

$$C = \langle \alpha_0, \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_{k-1}, \dots \rangle \quad d_C(\lambda) = \lambda^k + a_{k-1} \lambda^{k-1} + \dots + a_0$$

$$C = \langle \alpha_0, \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_{k-1}, \dots \rangle \quad \text{则 } \mathcal{A}/C \text{ 在该基下矩阵为:}$$

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} -a_{k-1} & 1 & & \\ -a_{k-2} & & \ddots & \\ \vdots & & & \ddots \\ -a_0 & 0 & & 0 \end{pmatrix}$$

特别地,  $\mathcal{A}$  是幂零,  $d_C(\lambda) = \lambda^k$  则  $A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 & & \\ & \ddots & & \\ & & 0 & \end{pmatrix} = J_k(0)$

(第二分解定理) 第一  $\rightarrow$  根子空间

定理:  $B: W \rightarrow W$  为幂零变换, 则  $W = C_0 \oplus C_1 \oplus \dots \oplus C_m$

$C_i$  为关于  $B$  的循环子空间,  $C_i = \langle \alpha_0, B\alpha_0, \dots, B^{d_{i-1}}\alpha_0 \rangle$

$M_i = \{B^{d_{i-1}}, \dots, B\alpha_0, \alpha_0\}$  为  $C_i$  基  $M = M_1 \cup \dots \cup M_m$  为  $W$ -组基

$B$  在  $M$  下矩阵  $J = \text{diag}(J_{d_1}(0), \dots, J_{d_m}(0))$

Proof: 取  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_m \in W$

$$W = \langle \alpha_1, B\alpha_1, \dots, B^{d_{m-1}}\alpha_1 \rangle \oplus \dots \oplus \langle \alpha_m, B\alpha_m, \dots, B^{d_{m-1}}\alpha_m \rangle$$

$$B^{d_i}\alpha_i = 0 \Rightarrow \alpha_i \in \ker B^{d_i} \quad \alpha_i \in \ker B^{d_{i-1}}$$

$$\ker B \subset \ker B^2 \subset \dots \subset \ker B^{d_1} \subset \ker B^P = W$$

$$r_F = \text{rank}(B^F) \quad \alpha_F = r_{F-1} - r_F \quad \delta_F = \alpha_F - \alpha_{F+1}$$

$$\ker B^P = \ker B^{P_1} \oplus U_{P_1} \quad \dim U_{P_1} = (n - r_P) - (n - r_{P+1}) = r_{P_1} - r_P = \alpha_{P_1}$$

取  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_{P_1} \in U_{P_1}$  线性无关

$$B^{P_1}\alpha_1 \in \dots \in B\alpha_1 \in \alpha_1 \leftrightarrow \alpha$$

$$B^{P_1}\alpha_{P_1} \in \dots \in B\alpha_{P_1} \in \alpha_{P_1} \leftrightarrow C_{P_1}$$

$$B\alpha_1, \dots, B\alpha_{P_1} \in \ker B^{P_1}$$

$$\ker B^{P_1} = \ker B^{P_2} \oplus \langle B\alpha_1, \dots, B\alpha_{P_2} \rangle \oplus U_{P_2}$$

$$\dim U_{P_2} = (n - r_{P_1}) - (n - r_{P_2}) = \alpha_{P_1} - \alpha_{P_2} = \delta_{P_1}$$

$$\exists \alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_{P_2} \in U_{P_2} \subset \ker B^{P_1}$$

取法类似

## 定理2 (Jordan 标准型定理)

$$\varphi: V \rightarrow V \quad P_A(\lambda) = (\lambda - \lambda_1)^{n_1} \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_s)^{n_s}$$

$$WV \cap V = W_{\lambda_1} \oplus W_{\lambda_2} \oplus \cdots \oplus W_{\lambda_s} \quad W_{\lambda_i} = \ker(\varphi - \lambda_i I)^{n_i}$$

D)  $W_{\lambda_i} = C_1 \oplus C_2 \oplus \cdots \oplus C_{m_i}$   $C_{ij}$  是关于  $(A - \lambda_i I)/W_{\lambda_i}$  的循环子空间  $m_i = \dim V$

13)  $\exists$  在  $V$  的一组基  $M$ ,  $A$  在  $M$  下的矩阵为

$$J = \text{diag}(J_1, \dots, J_s) \quad J_i = \text{diag}(J_{i1}, \dots, J_{im_i})$$

$$J_{ij} = J_{\lambda_i j}(\lambda_i) = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_i & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \lambda_i \end{pmatrix}$$

$$(4) A \in \mathbb{C}^n \Rightarrow \exists$$
 逆阵  $P$  st.  $P^{-1}AP = J$

\* Jordan 标准型证明完成

例1  $A = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 2 & 3 & 4 \\ 1 & 2 & & \\ 1 & & 3 & \\ 1 & & 2 & \end{pmatrix}$  求  $A$  的 Jordan 标准型  $J$ ,  $\exists P$  st.  $P^{-1}AP = J$

$$\text{解: } P_A(\lambda) = (\lambda - 1)^4 \quad r(A - 1) = 3 \quad r(A - 1)^2 = 2 \quad r(A - 1)^3 = 1 \quad r(A - 1)^4 = 0$$

$$\begin{matrix} \text{Ker}(A - 1) \subset \text{Ker}(A - 1)^2 \subset \text{Ker}(A - 1)^3 \subset \text{Ker}(A - 1)^4 = \mathbb{C}^4 \\ \downarrow \quad \downarrow \quad \downarrow \quad \downarrow \\ 1 \quad 2 \quad 3 \quad 4 \end{matrix}$$

$$(A - 1)^3 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 0 & 0 & 8 \\ 0 & \end{pmatrix} \quad \alpha_1 = \begin{pmatrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \alpha_2, (A - 1)\alpha_2, (A - 1)^2\alpha_2, (A - 1)^3\alpha_2$$

$$\alpha = \langle \alpha_1, (A - 1)\alpha_1, (A - 1)^2\alpha_1, (A - 1)^3\alpha_1 \rangle$$

$$J = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & 2 \end{pmatrix} \quad P = (\alpha_4, \alpha_3, \alpha_2, \alpha_1) \quad \text{从几何量角度去找}$$

例2  $A = \begin{array}{c|cc|cc} 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 2 & 0 & 1 & 2 \\ 0 & 0 & 2 & 0 & 1 \\ \hline 0 & & & 2 & 1 \\ 0 & & & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & & & 0 & 0 \end{array}$  \*  $A$  Jordan 标准型  $\& P$  st.  $P^{-1}AP = J$ ?

$$P_A(\lambda) = (\lambda - 1)(\lambda - 2)^5$$

$$\lambda_1 = 1 \quad W_{\lambda_1} = \ker(A - 1) \quad \alpha_1 = (1, 0, 0, 0, 0)^T$$

$$\lambda_2 = 2 \quad W_{\lambda_2} = \ker(A - 2)^2 = \ker(A - 2)^3 \quad r(A - 2) = 4 \quad r(A - 2)^2 = 2 \quad r(A - 2)^3 = 1$$

$$B = A - 2I \quad \begin{matrix} 2 \\ 4 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{matrix} \quad \begin{matrix} 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{matrix} \quad \begin{matrix} 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{matrix} \quad \begin{matrix} 0 \\ 0 \\ 1 \\ 0 \\ 0 \end{matrix}$$

$$\ker B \subset \ker B^2 \subset \ker B^3$$

$$\{Y_1, Y_2\} \quad \{Y_1, Y_2, Y_3, Y_4\} \quad \{Y_1, Y_2, Y_3, Y_4, Y_5\}$$

$$Y_1 = (1, 1, 0, 0, 0, 0)^T$$

$$Y_2 = (1, 0, 1, 0, 0, 0)^T$$

$$Y_3 = (0, 0, 0, 1, 0, 0)^T$$

$$Y_4 = (0, 0, 3, 0, 2, -1)^T \quad Y_5 = (0, 0, 0, 0, 1, -2)^T$$

$$\text{ker } B^3 = \text{ker } B^2 \oplus U_2 \quad U_2 = \langle Y_5 \rangle \quad \text{取 } \alpha_1 = Y_5$$

$$G = \langle \alpha_1, B\alpha_1, B^2\alpha_1 \rangle$$

$$\text{ker } B^2 = \text{ker } B \oplus \langle B\alpha_1 \rangle \oplus U_1 \quad \dim U_1 = 1$$

$$\alpha_2 = Y_4 \quad C_2 = \langle \alpha_2, B\alpha_2 \rangle \quad W_{\alpha_2} = G \oplus C_2 \quad J > \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 \\ 2 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$P = (U_1, B\alpha_1^2, B\alpha_1, \alpha_1, B\alpha_2, \alpha_2)$$

### 5.4 多项式矩阵相抵

$$A(\lambda) \in F[\lambda]^{m \times n} \quad A(\lambda) = \begin{pmatrix} a_{11}(\lambda) & \cdots & a_{1n}(\lambda) \\ a_{21}(\lambda) & \cdots & a_{2n}(\lambda) \end{pmatrix} \dots \text{多项式矩阵} \quad a_{ij}(\lambda) \in F[\lambda]$$

- rank(A(\lambda)) - 非零子式最大阶数

-  $A(\lambda)$  可逆  $\Leftrightarrow \exists B(\lambda) \in F[\lambda]^{n \times m}$  st.  $A(\lambda)B(\lambda) = I$

$\hookrightarrow A(\lambda)$  不可逆  $\Rightarrow$  (虽然满秩)

命题1  $A(\lambda)$  可逆  $\Leftrightarrow \det(A(\lambda)) = c \in F$   $c \neq 0$    
  $\downarrow$  非零常数

$$\text{pf: } A(\lambda)B(\lambda) = I \Rightarrow \det(A(\lambda)) \cdot \det(B(\lambda)) = 1$$

$$\Rightarrow \det(A(\lambda)) = c \neq 0$$

$$\Leftarrow \det(A(\lambda)) = c \neq 0 \quad A(\lambda)^* \in F[\lambda] \quad A(\lambda)A(\lambda)^* = \det(A(\lambda))I - cI$$

初等变换 III  $P_{ij}$  II  $D_i(a)$   $a \neq 0$   $a \in F$

$$\text{III } T_{ij}(f(\lambda)) \quad \boxed{\text{可逆}} \quad P_{ij}^{-1} = P_{ij} \quad D_i(a)^{-1} = P_i(a^{-1})$$

$$T_{ij}(f(\lambda))^{-1} = T_{ij}(-f(\lambda))$$

例  $A = \begin{pmatrix} 4 & 3 & -4 \\ 1 & 0 & 2 \\ 1 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$  将  $\lambda I - A$  通过初等变换化为对角阵

$$\lambda I - A = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda - 4 & -3 & 4 \\ 1 & \lambda & -2 \\ 1 & -1 & \lambda \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 0 & -\lambda + 1 & \lambda^2 - 4\lambda + 4 \\ 0 & \lambda - 1 & \lambda - 2 \\ 1 & -1 & \lambda \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -\lambda + 1 & \lambda^2 - 4\lambda + 4 \\ 0 & \lambda - 1 & \lambda - 2 \end{pmatrix}$$

↑ 用初等法产生对角

$$\rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & -\lambda^2 + 3\lambda - 3 & \lambda^2 - 4\lambda + 4 \\ 0 & 1 & \lambda - 2 \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & \lambda - 2 \\ 0 & -\lambda^2 + 3\lambda - 2 & \lambda^2 - 4\lambda + 4 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$= \begin{pmatrix} 1 & & \\ & 1 & \\ & & (\lambda - 1)^2(\lambda - 2) \end{pmatrix}$$

(前面一个多项式代数行)

定理1  $A(\lambda) \in F[\lambda]^{n \times n}$   $r(A(\lambda)) = r$  则经过有限次初等变换可将  $A(\lambda)$  化为  $\begin{pmatrix} D(\lambda) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$

$$D(\lambda) = \text{Diag}(d_1(\lambda), d_2(\lambda), \dots, d_r(\lambda))$$

$$\text{且 } d_i(\lambda) \mid d_{i+1}(\lambda) \quad i=1, 2, \dots, r-1$$

P394

1121(4119)

3. 9.5

2018.12.17

定理一  $A(\lambda) \in F[\lambda]^{n \times n}$   $A(\lambda)$  经过有限次初等变换化为  $\begin{pmatrix} D(\lambda) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$

$D(\lambda) = \text{Diag}(d_1(\lambda), \dots, d_r(\lambda))$   $d_i(\lambda)$  是首-多项式 且  $d_i(\lambda) \mid d_{i+1}(\lambda) \quad i=1, 2, \dots, r-1$

存在初等阵  $P_1(\lambda), \dots, P_s(\lambda), Q_1(\lambda), \dots, Q_t(\lambda)$  使  $P_1(\lambda) \cdots P_s(\lambda) A(\lambda) Q_t(\lambda) \cdots Q_1(\lambda) = \begin{pmatrix} D(\lambda) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$

proof: 设  $A(\lambda) = 0$  经过有限次初等变换将  $A(\lambda)$  化为  $B(\lambda) = (b_{ij}(\lambda))$

满足  $b_{ii}(\lambda) \mid b_{ij}(\lambda) \quad A(\lambda) \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} b_{11}(\lambda) & b_{12}(\lambda) & \dots & b_{1n}(\lambda) \\ \vdots & & & \\ b_{m1}(\lambda) & \dots & \dots & b_{mn}(\lambda) \end{pmatrix} \quad b_{ij}(\lambda) = g_{ji}(\lambda) b_{ii}(\lambda)$

初等变换  $\rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} b_{11}(\lambda) & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & \ddots & & \\ \vdots & & B(\lambda) & \\ 0 & & & \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} b_{11}(\lambda) & & & \\ & b_{22}(\lambda) & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ & & & B(\lambda) \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \dots$

• Tip: 采用 Euclid 算法对多项式矩阵降阶 (有限次后全整除) ↑ 从上而下

所有  $a_{ij}(x)$  被  $a_{11}(x)$  整除



$$\left( \begin{array}{c|cc} a_{11} & a_{12}(x) & \dots \\ \vdots & a_{ij}(x) \end{array} \right) \quad \text{若 } a_{11} \mid a_{ij}(x) \quad \text{将 } a_{ij} \text{ 加到第一行, 向上}$$

推论 1  $A_W$  可逆  $\Leftrightarrow A_W$  为有限初等矩阵之积

$\Leftarrow$  可逆方阵乘以可逆

$\Rightarrow$  满秩  $r=n$  且  $\det(P_A(x)) \neq 0 = c$

$$= a_{11}(x) \cdots a_{rr}(x) \quad a_{ii}(x) \neq 0$$

$$\therefore p_1(x) \cdots p_r(x) q_1(x) \cdots q_s(x) \neq 0$$

推论 2 存在可逆阵  $P_W(x)$  st.  $P_W A_W(Q_W) = \begin{pmatrix} D_W & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$

定义 2  $A_W, B_W \in F[x]^{m \times n}$ , 如果存在可逆方阵  $P_W(x)$  st.  $P_W A_W(Q_W) = B_W$

则称  $A_W$  与  $B_W$  相抵

III  $A_W$  与  $B_W$  相抵充要条件?

b)  $A_W$  相抵标准型?

定义 3  $A(x) \in F[x]^{m \times n}$ , 若  $A(x)$  的  $k$  行所成的最大公因子为  $k$  行行列式因子, 记为  $D_{k(x)}$

定理 2  $A_W, B_W \in F[x]^{m \times n}$ . 则  $A_W$  与  $B_W$  相抵  $\Leftrightarrow$  它们的各阶行列式因子均相同.

proof:  $B_W = P_W A_W(Q_W)$

$$B_W \left( \begin{smallmatrix} i_1 & \dots & i_k \\ j_1 & \dots & j_k \end{smallmatrix} \right) = \sum_{1 \leq p_1 < \dots < p_k \leq n} \sum_{1 \leq q_1 < \dots < q_k \leq n} P(x) \left( \begin{smallmatrix} i_1 & \dots & i_k \\ p_1 & \dots & p_k \end{smallmatrix} \right) A_W \left( \begin{smallmatrix} p_1 & \dots & p_k \\ q_1 & \dots & q_k \end{smallmatrix} \right) Q(x) \left( \begin{smallmatrix} q_1 & \dots & q_k \\ i_1 & \dots & i_k \end{smallmatrix} \right)$$

该  $A(\lambda)$  行列式因式为  $D_k(\lambda)$   $B_{k+1} \cdots B_n$  为  $D_{n-k}(\lambda)$

$$\therefore D_{k+1}(\lambda) | A \begin{pmatrix} P_1 & \cdots & P_k \\ Q_1 & \cdots & Q_k \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow D_{k+1}(\lambda) | B_{k+1} \begin{pmatrix} i_1 & \cdots & i_k \\ j_1 & \cdots & j_k \end{pmatrix} = \tilde{D}_{n-k}(\lambda)$$

对称相抵对称性:  $D_{k+1}(\lambda) | D_{n-k}(\lambda)$   $D_{k+1}(\lambda) | D_k(\lambda) \Rightarrow D_k(\lambda) = D_{n-k}(\lambda)^c$  #

$$A(\lambda) \sim \begin{pmatrix} D_{k+1}(\lambda) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad D_{k+1} = \deg(D_{k+1}) - \deg(D_k)$$

$$D_{k+1} = \gcd(d_{k+1}, \dots, d_{n-k}, d_k) \quad D_{n-k} = d_{n-k} d_k$$

$$d_{k+1} = d_{k+1} \cdots d_{n-k} \quad D_{k+1}(\lambda) = 0 \Rightarrow \boxed{d_{k+1} = \frac{D_{k+1}}{D_{k+1}(\lambda)}} \text{ 重排意义}$$

$$\therefore B(\lambda) \sim \begin{pmatrix} D_{n-k}(\lambda) & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow A(\lambda) \sim B(\lambda) \text{ 由中间矩阵确定相抵也可}$$

定义 4  $A(\lambda) \in F[\lambda]^{m \times n}$   $r(A(\lambda))=r$  该  $A(\lambda)$  行列式因式为  $D_k(\lambda)$   $k=1, 2, \dots, r$

称  $d_{k+1} = \frac{D_{k+1}}{D_{k+1}(\lambda)}$  为  $A(\lambda)$  的不变因子  $(i_1, 2, \dots, r)$   $D_r(\lambda)=1$ .

Smith 标准型

定理 3  $A(\lambda) \in F[\lambda]^{m \times n}$   $r(A(\lambda))=r$  则  $A(\lambda)$  相抵于  $\begin{pmatrix} D_{n-k} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{pmatrix}$  这里  $D_{n-k} = \gcd(d_{n-k}, \dots, d_m)$   
 $\Rightarrow A(\lambda)$  唯一确定

定义 5  $F=C$   $f(\lambda) = (\lambda - \lambda_1)^{n_1} \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_s)^{n_s}$  称  $\{(\lambda - \lambda_i)^{n_i}\}$  为  $f(\lambda)$  的初等因子组

$A(\lambda) \in C[\lambda]^{m \times n}$   $r(A(\lambda))=r$   $d_1(\lambda), \dots, d_r(\lambda)$  为  $A(\lambda)$  的不变因子, 设

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} d_1(\lambda) = (\lambda - \lambda_1)^{n_1} \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_s)^{n_s} \\ d_r(\lambda) = (\lambda - \lambda_1)^{n_{r1}} \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_r)^{n_{rs}} \end{array} \right. \Rightarrow n_{ij} \leq n_{sj} = \cdots = n_{rj} \quad j=1, 2, \dots, s$$

称  $\{(\lambda - \lambda_j)^{n_i} \mid n_{ij} \neq 0\}$  为  $A(\lambda)$  的初等因子组

例1 求下列矩阵的Smith标准型，行列式因子，不变因子及初等因子组

$$(1) A(\lambda) = \begin{pmatrix} 1-\lambda & \lambda^2 & \lambda \\ \lambda & 1-\lambda & -\lambda \\ 1+\lambda^2 & \lambda^2 & -\lambda^2 \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} 1-\lambda & & \\ & 1-\lambda & \\ & & (1+\lambda)\lambda \end{pmatrix} D_{AU}=1 \quad D_{BU}=\lambda \\ B(\lambda)=\lambda^2(1+\lambda)$$

$$\Rightarrow d_1(\lambda)=1 \quad d_2(\lambda)=\boxed{\lambda} \quad d_3(\lambda)=\boxed{(1+\lambda)} \quad \text{初等因子组 } \{1, \lambda, 1+\lambda\} \quad \textcircled{P}$$

$$(2) I = \begin{pmatrix} a & & & \\ & \ddots & & \\ & & a & \\ & & & a \end{pmatrix}_{n \times n} \quad A(\lambda)=\lambda^n - 1 \quad D_{AU}=(\lambda-a)^n \quad D_{BU}=1=D_{2U}= \dots = D_{nU}=1 \\ \therefore d_1(\lambda)= \dots = d_{n-1}(\lambda)=1 \quad d_n(\lambda)=(\lambda-a)^n \quad \therefore \{(\lambda-a)^n\} \text{ 初等因子组}$$

Smith标准型:  $\text{Diag}\{1, 1, \dots, (\lambda-a)^n\}$

$$(3) A(\lambda) = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda^2(\lambda+1)(\lambda-1)^3 & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda^4(\lambda-1)^2 \end{pmatrix} \quad D_{AU}=\lambda^2(\lambda-1)^2 \quad D_{BU}=\lambda^6(\lambda-1)^5(\lambda+1) \\ d_{1U}=\lambda^2(\lambda-1)^2 \quad d_{2U}=\lambda^4(\lambda-1)^2(\lambda+1) \quad \text{Smith标准型, diag}(d_1(\lambda), d_2(\lambda)) \\ \text{初等因子组 } \{ \lambda^2, (\lambda-1)^2, \lambda^4, (\lambda-1)^2, (\lambda+1) \}$$

定理4  $A(\lambda) B(\lambda) \in F[\lambda]^{n \times n}$  则  $A(\lambda)$  与  $B(\lambda)$  相抵  $\Leftrightarrow$  下列任一个成立

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} (1) A(\lambda) \text{ 与 } B(\lambda) \text{ 行列式因子相同} \\ (2) \text{ 不变因子相同} \\ (3) \text{ 初等因子组} \quad \text{且} \quad r(A(\lambda))=r(B(\lambda)) \end{array} \right.$$

证: (3)  $\Leftarrow$  初等因子组唯一确定  $\Rightarrow$  不变因子  $\{(\lambda-\lambda_j)^{n_j} \mid n_j \neq 0\}$   $r(A(\lambda))=r$

固定  $\{(\lambda-\lambda_j)^{k_1}, \dots, (\lambda-\lambda_j)^{k_p}\}$   $k_1 = \dots = k_p$

$(\lambda-\lambda_j)^{k_p}$  分给  $d_r(\lambda)$ .  $(\lambda-\lambda_j)^{k_1} \rightarrow d_{r-p+1}(\lambda)$

$(\lambda-\lambda_j)^{k_1} \cdots d_{r-p+1}(\lambda)$  同类型按阶分给不变因子

定理5 设  $A(\lambda)=\text{Diag}\{f_1(\lambda), \dots, f_m(\lambda)\}$  则  $A(\lambda)$  的初等因子组与  $f_1(\lambda), \dots, f_m(\lambda)$  的初等因子组全体相同

$$f_1(\lambda)=(\lambda-\lambda_1)^{k_1} \cdots (\lambda-\lambda_s)^{k_s}$$

$$f_i(\lambda)=(\lambda-\lambda_i)^{k_{1i}} \cdots (\lambda-\lambda_i)^{k_{si}}$$

P404

1. 12113116) 2. 4

P414 2

定理4  $A(\lambda) = \text{Diag}\{f_1(\lambda), \dots, f_r(\lambda)\}$  则  $A(\lambda)$  的初等因子组与  $f_1(\lambda), \dots, f_r(\lambda)$  的初等因子组全体相同

proof:  $f_i(\lambda) = (\lambda - \lambda_1)^{n_{i1}} \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_s)^{n_{is}}$   $\{( \lambda - \lambda_j )^{m_{ij}} | m_{ij} \neq 0\}$   
 $f_r(\lambda) = (\lambda - \lambda_1)^{nr_1} \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_s)^{nr_s}$   $n_{1j}, \dots, n_{rj}$  重排  $\Rightarrow n_{1j}^{\tilde{n}} = n_{2j}^{\tilde{n}} = \dots = n_{rj}^{\tilde{n}}$   
 $\Downarrow D(\lambda) = (\lambda - \lambda_1)^{\tilde{n}_{11}} \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_s)^{\tilde{n}_{1s}} = d_1(\lambda)$   
 $D_2(\lambda) = (\lambda - \lambda_1)^{\tilde{n}_{21} + \tilde{n}_{22}} \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_s)^{\tilde{n}_{2s} + \tilde{n}_{2s}}$   $\Rightarrow d_2(\lambda) = (\lambda - \lambda_1)^{\tilde{n}_{21}} \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_s)^{\tilde{n}_{2s}}$   
 $\vdots$   
 $\Rightarrow A(\lambda)$  初等因子组为  $\{( \lambda - \lambda_j )^{\tilde{n}_{ij}} | \tilde{n}_{ij} \neq 0\}$

推论1 满对角阵  $A(\lambda) = \text{Diag}\{A_1(\lambda), \dots, A_r(\lambda)\}$  的初等因子组与  $A_1(\lambda), \dots, A_r(\lambda)$  的初等因子组全体相同  $\rightarrow$  方便计算

推论2  $J = \text{diag}(J_1, \dots, J_s)$   $J_i = J_{m_i}(\lambda_i)$  则  $\lambda I - J$  的初等因子组为  $\{(\lambda - \lambda_i)^{m_i}\}$

定理5  $A, B \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$  则  $A$  与  $B$  相似  $\Leftrightarrow \lambda I - A$  与  $\lambda I - B$  相抵

pf:  $\Rightarrow B = PAP^{-1} \Rightarrow \lambda I - B = P(\lambda I - A)P^{-1}$   
 $\Leftarrow \lambda I - B = PW(\lambda I - A)QW^{-1} \Rightarrow PW^\top(\lambda I - B) = QW(\lambda I - A)Q^{-1}$   
 $\text{设 } \lambda I - B \Rightarrow O = Q(B)B - A(QB) \quad \text{记 } QB = W \quad (\text{后来})$   
 $\Rightarrow WB = AW \quad \text{若 } WB \neq AW, \text{ 则证毕} \Rightarrow B = W^{-1}AW$

推论  $A$  与  $B$  相似  $\Leftrightarrow \lambda I - A$  与  $\lambda I - B$  初等因子组相同

定理6  $A \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$  设  $\lambda I - A$  的初等因子组为

$(\lambda - \lambda_1)^{e_{11}} \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_1)^{e_{1n}} \quad \left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \end{array} \right\} \text{称 } A \text{ 的初等因子组}$   
 $(\lambda - \lambda_2)^{e_{21}} \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_2)^{e_{2n}} \quad \left. \begin{array}{l} \\ \end{array} \right\}$

则  $A$  相似于  $J = \text{Diag}(J_1, J_2, \dots, J_s)$

$$J_i = \text{Diag}(J_{i1}, \dots, J_{im_i}) \quad J_{ij} = J_{\lambda_{ij}}(\lambda_{ij}) = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_{ij} & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \lambda_{ij} \end{pmatrix} \text{ for } x_{ij}$$

PF:

$\lambda I - A$  与  $\lambda I - J$  初等因子组相同  $\lambda I - J_{ij}$  初等因子  $(\lambda - \lambda_{ij})^{k_{ij}} \rightarrow$  回到 Jordan

初等因子组  $\Leftrightarrow$  Jordan 块  $\Leftrightarrow$  循环子空间

### 3.5 家方阵的相似

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} \sim \begin{pmatrix} i & 0 \\ 0 & -i \end{pmatrix} \quad \text{乘出来一个高跟}$$

命题 1  $A, B \in \mathbb{R}^n$  则  $A$  与  $B$  家方阵  $\Leftrightarrow A$  与  $B$  复相似

证:  $\Rightarrow$

$$\Leftarrow B = PAP^{-1} \quad P = P_1 + iP_2 \quad P_1, P_2 \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$$

$$BP = PA \Rightarrow BP_1 = P_1 A \quad BP_2 = P_2 A$$

$$\Rightarrow B(P_1 + iP_2) = (P_1 + iP_2)A \quad \text{转入复数域} \quad P_1 + iP_2 \text{ 可逆}$$

$$f(A) = \det(P_1 + iP_2)$$

虚

命题 2  $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  则  $A$  初等因子组成对共轭出现

2.9.

$$m=1 \quad A = \begin{pmatrix} a+bi & \\ & a-bi \end{pmatrix} = aI + b\begin{pmatrix} i & -i \\ -i & i \end{pmatrix} \sim aI + b\begin{pmatrix} 0 & 1 \\ -1 & 0 \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ -b & a \end{pmatrix} \quad \rightarrow a+bi$$

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} J_m(I) & \\ & J_m(I) \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} I & & & \\ & \ddots & & \\ & & I & \\ & & & \ddots & I \\ & & & & I \end{pmatrix} \sim \begin{pmatrix} I & 0 & & & \\ 0 & I & 0 & & \\ & 0 & I & 0 & \\ & & 0 & I & 0 \\ & & & \ddots & \\ & & & & I & 0 \\ & & & & & 0 & I \\ & & & & & & \ddots & \\ & & & & & & & I & 0 \\ & & & & & & & & 0 & I \end{pmatrix} \sim \begin{pmatrix} a & b & 1 & 0 & & \\ -b & a & 0 & 1 & & \\ a & b & 0 & 0 & 1 & 0 \\ b & a & 0 & 0 & 0 & 1 \\ & & & & & \ddots \\ & & & & & & a & b & 1 & 0 \\ & & & & & & & b & a & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{设 } k(A+bi) = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ -b & a \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow \begin{pmatrix} k(a+bi) & k(bi) \\ -k(bi) & k(a+bi) \end{pmatrix}$$

综合

$$J = \begin{pmatrix} J_m(\lambda_1) & & \\ & \ddots & J_m(\lambda_s) \\ & & L_m(A+bi) \\ & & & \ddots & L_m(A+bi) \end{pmatrix}$$

$$L_m = \begin{pmatrix} k(a_1 + b_1 i)^{10^k} \\ \vdots \\ k(a_j + b_j i)^{10^k} \\ \vdots \\ k(a_l + b_l i)^{10^k} \end{pmatrix}$$

例11  $A \neq 0$  证明:  $J_m(\alpha)$  与  $\alpha J_m(1)$  相似:  $\begin{pmatrix} \alpha & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \alpha \end{pmatrix} \sim \alpha \begin{pmatrix} 1 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

pf: ①  $\lambda I - J_m(\alpha)$  行列式因子  $(\lambda - \alpha)^m$

$$\lambda I - \alpha J_m(1) = \begin{vmatrix} \lambda - \alpha & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \lambda - \alpha \end{vmatrix} \cdots (\lambda - \alpha)^m$$

例12  $A^T$  与  $A$  相似

$$\textcircled{1} \quad A = J_m(\alpha) \quad \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \alpha \end{pmatrix} \sim \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \alpha \end{pmatrix}$$

②  $\lambda I - A^T$  与  $\lambda I - A$  行列式因子相同

对称反例

例13  $A$  是  $n$  阶可逆复方阵 证明: 存在复方阵  $B$  st.  $B^2 = A$

$$A = PJP^{-1} \quad \text{若 } B \text{ 在 } \tilde{J} \text{ st. } \tilde{J} = J^2 \quad B = P\tilde{J}P^{-1} \quad \text{则 } B^2 = A$$

又假设  $A = J$   $\rightarrow A = J_m(\alpha) \quad \alpha \neq 0$

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} \alpha & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \alpha \end{pmatrix} = \alpha I + N \quad N = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & 0 \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow A = \alpha I + \frac{N}{\alpha}$$

再将  $(1+x)^{\frac{1}{2}} = \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{2}(1-1) \cdots (1-k+1) x^k$  展开

$$\text{令 } B = \sqrt{\alpha} \sum_{k=0}^{\infty} \frac{1}{k!} (1-1) \cdots (1-k+1) \left(\frac{N}{\alpha}\right)^k \quad \text{满足题意}$$

\* 路

例4 数列  $\{a_n\}$  满足  $a_n = 3a_{n-2} + 2a_{n-1}$   $a_1 = a_2 = a_3 = 1$  求  $\{a_n\}$  通项

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_n \\ a_{n-1} \\ a_{n-2} \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} 3 & 0 & 2 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} a_{n-1} \\ a_{n-2} \\ a_{n-3} \end{pmatrix} = \dots = \begin{pmatrix} 0 & 3 & 2 \\ 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \end{pmatrix}^{n-3} \begin{pmatrix} a_3 \\ a_2 \\ a_1 \end{pmatrix}$$

$$A = PJP^{-1} \quad A^{n-3} = PJ^{n-3}P^{-1} \quad (P = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 1 & -1 \\ 2 & -1 & 0 \\ 1 & 1 & 1 \end{pmatrix}, J = \begin{pmatrix} 2 & 1 & 1 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \end{pmatrix})$$

例5 证:  $A$  的最小多项式等于  $\lambda I - A$  最后一个不变因子  $d_m(\lambda)$

例6 设  $n$  阶方阵  $A$  的特征多项式与最小多项式相等 ( $A$ -单纯方阵), 证方阵  $B$  与单纯方阵  $A$  相交换, 则  $B = f(A)$   $\Leftrightarrow$  多项式

证:  $p_A(\lambda) = d_1(\lambda)d_2(\lambda)\dots d_n(\lambda) \quad d_m(\lambda) = d_A(\lambda)$

$$p_A(\lambda) = d_A(\lambda) \Rightarrow d_1(\lambda) = \dots = d_{n-1}(\lambda) = 1$$

$$(\lambda - \lambda_1)^{n_1} \dots (\lambda - \lambda_s)^{n_s}$$

$$A \text{ 相交换 } \Rightarrow \text{Diag}(J_{n_1}(\lambda_1), \dots, J_{n_s}(\lambda_s))$$

$$AB = BA \Rightarrow B = f(A)$$

$$\text{只考虑 } A = J \quad B = (B_{ij})_{s \times s} \quad AB = BA \Rightarrow J_i B_{ij} = B_{ij} J_i$$

$$\text{若 } i \neq j \quad B_{ij} = 0 \quad (\text{无相同特征值, 则只能为 } 0)$$

P422 4

P429 2

P436 2 4 3

# 第三章 Euclid 空间与 Unitary (酉) 空间

2018.12.24

## 3.1 Euclid 空间

定义  $V$  为  $\mathbb{R}$  上线性空间, 称  $(\cdot, \cdot)$  为  $V$  内积 ( $V \times V \rightarrow \mathbb{R}$ ), 如果:

1) 对称性  $\langle \alpha, \beta \rangle = \langle \beta, \alpha \rangle$

2) 双线性性  $\langle \lambda_1 \alpha_1 + \lambda_2 \alpha_2, \beta \rangle = \lambda_1 \langle \alpha_1, \beta \rangle + \lambda_2 \langle \alpha_2, \beta \rangle$

3) 正定性:  $\langle \alpha, \alpha \rangle \geq 0$  等号成立  $\Leftrightarrow \alpha = 0$

$V$  称为 Euclid 空间 (上有内积)

$$|\alpha| = \sqrt{\langle \alpha, \alpha \rangle} \quad \arccos \langle \alpha, \beta \rangle = \frac{|\langle \alpha, \beta \rangle|}{|\alpha| |\beta|} \quad |\langle \alpha, \beta \rangle|^2 = |\alpha, \alpha| |\beta, \beta|$$

$$\alpha \perp \beta \Leftrightarrow \langle \alpha, \beta \rangle = 0$$

E.g. 1  $V = \mathbb{R}^n \quad x = (x_1, \dots, x_n)^T \quad y = (y_1, y_2, \dots, y_n)^T$

$$\langle x, y \rangle = \lambda_1 x_1 y_1 + \lambda_2 x_2 y_2 + \dots + \lambda_n x_n y_n \quad \lambda_i > 0$$

E.g. 2  $V = \mathbb{R}^{n \times m} \quad \langle A, B \rangle = \text{Tr}(A B^T)$

E.g. 3  $V = C[a, b] \quad \langle f(x), g(x) \rangle = \int_a^b f(x) g(x) dx$

$\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n$  为  $V$  中一组基  $\alpha = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n)x \quad \beta = (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n)y$

$$\langle \alpha, \beta \rangle = x^T G y \quad G = ((\alpha_i, \alpha_j))_{n \times n} - 度量矩阵$$

$\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n$  为  $V$  中另一组基  $\beta = (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n)y \quad \langle \beta_1, \dots, \beta_n \rangle = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n)P$

$$\alpha = (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n) \tilde{x} \quad \beta = (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n) \tilde{y} \quad \langle \alpha, \beta \rangle = \tilde{x}^T \tilde{G} \tilde{y}^T \quad \tilde{G} = (G_{ij})_{n \times n}$$

$$\tilde{G} = P^T G P - 相合$$

相合

• 相合标准型 実对称矩阵  $A \sim \begin{pmatrix} I^{(p)} & \\ & -I^{(q)} & \\ & & 0 \end{pmatrix}$  若  $G$  正定  $\sim G = ((G_{ij}))_{n \times n} \Leftrightarrow (G_{ij}, G_{jj}) > \delta_{ij}$

$\hookrightarrow$   $\alpha = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) \tilde{x}$  为  $V$  的标准正交基, 若  $\langle \alpha_i, \alpha_j \rangle = \delta_{ij}$

## Schmit-Gram 正交化

$$\{\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n\} \rightarrow \{\beta_1, \beta_2, \dots, \beta_n\}$$

$$\left\{ \begin{array}{l} \beta_1 = \frac{\alpha_1}{\|\alpha_1\|} \\ \beta_2 = \alpha_2 - (\alpha_2, \beta_1)\beta_1 \\ \vdots \\ \beta_n = \frac{\alpha_n}{\|\alpha_n\|} \end{array} \right. \Rightarrow \left\{ \begin{array}{l} \alpha_1 = 1\beta_1/\|\beta_1\| \\ \alpha_2 = (\alpha_2, \beta_1)\beta_1 + 1\beta_2/\|\beta_2\| \\ \vdots \\ \alpha_n = (\alpha_n, \beta_1)\beta_1 + \dots + (\alpha_n, \beta_n)\beta_n \end{array} \right.$$

\* 注意可表示方阵可分为下面  $A=QR$  - QR 分解

$$(\alpha_1, \alpha_2, \dots, \alpha_n) = (\epsilon_1, \dots, \epsilon_n) \begin{pmatrix} * & * & * \\ 0 & * & * \\ 0 & 0 & * \end{pmatrix}$$

$\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}, \{\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n\}$  为  $V$  的基,  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  为标准正交基

$$(\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n) = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n)P$$

$\{\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n\}$  为标准正交基  $\Leftrightarrow P$  为正交方阵

定义  $W^\perp := \{\beta \in V \mid \beta \perp w\} = \{\beta \in V \mid (\alpha_i, \beta) = 0, \forall i \in W\}$

称  $W^\perp$  为  $W$  的正交补空间

命题 1  $V = W \oplus W^\perp$   $\Leftarrow$  唯一

设  $U, V$  为两个 Euclid 空间,  $\phi$  为线性空间  $U$  到  $V$  的同构映射, 满足

$$\phi(\alpha), \phi(\beta) = (\alpha, \beta) \quad \forall \alpha, \beta \in U$$

称 Euclid  $U$  与  $V$  同构

定理  $U$  与  $V$  同构  $\Leftrightarrow \dim U = \dim V$

$$\text{pf: } \Rightarrow V$$

$\Leftarrow \dim U = \dim V = n$  设  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}$  为  $U$  的标准正交基

$\{\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n\}$  为  $V$  的标准正交基  $\delta(\alpha_i, \beta_j) = \beta_i \cdot \beta_j = \delta_{ij}$   $i=1, \dots, n$

$$(\delta(\alpha_i), \delta(\alpha_j)) = (\beta_i, \beta_j) = \delta_{ij} \Rightarrow (\delta(\alpha_i), \delta(\beta_j)) = \delta_{ij}$$

对偶空间  $V$  为 Euclid 空间  $V^* = \{f\} \oplus V$  上线性函数

$$V \xrightarrow{\cong} \mathbb{R} \text{ 满足 } f(x_1\alpha_1 + x_2\alpha_2) = x_1f(\alpha_1) + x_2f(\alpha_2) \quad x_i \in \mathbb{R}$$

固定  $\beta \in V$ ,  $f_\beta: \alpha \in V \mapsto \langle \alpha, \beta \rangle \in \mathbb{R}$

$$f, g \in V^* \quad (f+g)(\alpha) = f(\alpha) + g(\alpha) \quad (af)(\alpha) = a f(\alpha)$$

$\Rightarrow V^*$  也构成线性空间 —  $V$  的对偶空间

定理  $V$  是 Euclid 空间, 则  $V^*$  与  $V$  同构

proof:  $\beta \in V$ ,  $f \in V^*$   $\sigma: \beta \in V \rightarrow f_\beta \in V^*$

单射:  $f_{\beta_1} = f_{\beta_2} \Rightarrow \beta_1 = \beta_2$

$$\forall \alpha \in V \quad f_{\beta_1}(\alpha) = f_{\beta_2}(\alpha) \Rightarrow \langle \alpha, \beta_1 \rangle = \langle \alpha, \beta_2 \rangle \Rightarrow \langle \alpha, \beta_1 - \beta_2 \rangle = 0, \quad \forall \alpha \in V$$

$$\text{取 } \alpha = \beta_1 - \beta_2 \Rightarrow \langle \beta_1, \beta_2; \beta_1 - \beta_2 \rangle = 0 \Rightarrow \beta_1 = \beta_2$$

满射:  $\forall f \in V^* \exists \beta \in V$  s.t.  $f_\beta = f$

设  $\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n$  为  $V$  标准正交基  $\alpha = x_1\alpha_1 + \dots + x_n\alpha_n \Rightarrow f(\alpha) = x_1f(\alpha_1) + \dots + x_nf(\alpha_n)$

$\therefore$  找  $\beta$  s.t.  $f_\beta(\alpha) = f(\alpha) \Leftrightarrow \langle \alpha, \beta \rangle = x_1f(\alpha_1) + \dots + x_nf(\alpha_n)$

$$\alpha = x_1\alpha_1 + \dots + x_n\alpha_n \quad \alpha = x_1\alpha_1 + \dots + x_n\alpha_n \Rightarrow f_\beta(\alpha) = \langle \alpha, \beta \rangle = f(\alpha)$$

$$\delta(\beta_1 + \beta_2) = f_{\beta_1} + f_{\beta_2} = f_{\beta_1} + f_{\beta_2} \leftarrow f_{\beta_1 + \beta_2}(\alpha) = \langle \alpha, \beta_1 + \beta_2 \rangle = \langle \alpha, \beta_1 \rangle + \langle \alpha, \beta_2 \rangle$$

定理 设  $\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n$  是  $V$  的标准正交基, 则  $f_{\beta_1}, \dots, f_{\beta_n}$  为  $V^*$  的一组基

$\Leftrightarrow f_{\beta_i}(\beta_j) = \delta_{ij}$   $f_{\beta_1}, \dots, f_{\beta_n}$  称为  $\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n$  的对偶基

$$\lambda_1 f_{\beta_1} + \dots + \lambda_n f_{\beta_n} = 0 \Rightarrow \alpha \in V \text{ 成立} \quad (\lambda_1 f_{\beta_1} + \dots + \lambda_n f_{\beta_n})(\alpha) = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow x_1 f(\alpha, \beta_1) + \dots + x_n f(\alpha, \beta_n) = 0 \Rightarrow x_1 f(\alpha, \beta_1) + \dots + x_n f(\alpha, \beta_n) = 0$$

$$\Rightarrow \lambda_1 \beta_1 + \dots + \lambda_n \beta_n = 0 \Rightarrow \lambda_1 = \dots = \lambda_n = 0 \quad \because f_{\beta_i}(\beta_j) = (\beta_i, \beta_j) = \delta_{ij}$$

## §2 Euclid 空间上的变换

正交变换，对称变换，线性变换

定义 1  $A$  为 Euclid 上线性变换，称  $A$  为正交变换，若：

$$(\alpha_1, \alpha_2) = (\beta_1, \beta_2) \quad \alpha_i, \beta_i \in V \quad \text{即内积不变}$$

定理 1  $A$  为正交变换  $\Leftrightarrow |\det A| = 1$   $A^T = A^{-1}$   $\triangleleft$  长度变  $\rightarrow$  乘角度

$\hookrightarrow A$  在一组标准正交基下的矩阵为正交阵

定理 2 正交变换的特征值模长均为 1

P481 3 4

P491 4 11 12

$\mathbb{R} \rightarrow \mathbb{C}$  $\mathbb{R}^n$ 

$$x = (x_1, \dots, x_n)^T \quad y = (y_1, \dots, y_n)^T$$

$$(x, y) = \bar{x}_1 y_1 + \dots + \bar{x}_n y_n$$

$$|(x, x)| = |\bar{x}_1|^2 + \dots + |\bar{x}_n|^2 \geq 0$$

$$(x, y) = \bar{y}(x)$$

$$(x, y) = \bar{\lambda}(x, y)$$

## 3.3 内积空间

定义  $V$  为  $\mathbb{C}$  上线性空间,  $V$  上定义二元函数  $(V \times V \rightarrow \mathbb{C})$  (...), 满足

i) 共轭对称  $(\alpha, \beta) = \overline{(\beta, \alpha)} \quad \forall \alpha, \beta \in V$

ii) 双线性  $(\lambda \alpha, \beta) = \bar{\lambda}(\alpha, \beta) \quad (\alpha, \mu \beta) = \mu(\alpha, \beta)$

$$(\alpha_1 + \alpha_2, \beta) = (\alpha_1, \beta) + (\alpha_2, \beta) \quad (\alpha, \beta_1 + \beta_2) = (\alpha, \beta_1) + (\alpha, \beta_2)$$

iii) 正定性  $\alpha, \alpha \geq 0$  等号成立  $\Leftrightarrow \alpha = 0$

称  $(\cdot, \cdot)$  为内积,  $V$  为内积空间

$\bar{x} = x^*$   $\alpha \perp \beta \Leftrightarrow (\alpha, \beta) = 0$

例 1  $V \subset \mathbb{C}^{mn}$   $(A, B) = \text{Tr}(A^* B)$

$$|\alpha| = \sqrt{(\alpha, \alpha)}$$

性质  $\frac{1}{m} \sum_{i=1}^m \alpha_i \bar{\alpha}_i, \frac{1}{m} \sum_{j=1}^m \beta_j \bar{\beta}_j = \frac{1}{m} \sum_{i=1}^m \sum_{j=1}^m \bar{\alpha}_i \beta_j = \alpha^* G \beta$  复量矩阵  
 $= ((\alpha_i, \beta_j))_{mn}$  (Gram)

$$|(\alpha, \beta)|^2 = (\alpha, \alpha)(\beta, \beta) \quad \text{Cauchy-Schwarz 不等式}$$

## G 特性

i)  $G^* = G$  共轭对称 Hermitian

ii)  $X^* G X \geq 0$  等号  $\Leftrightarrow X=0$  正定性 1. 有?

3) 不同基

$$\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\} \quad \{\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n\} \quad (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n) = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) P$$

$$\alpha = (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n) X \quad \beta = (P_1, \dots, P_n) \tilde{Y} \quad (\alpha, \beta) = \tilde{X}^* \tilde{G} \tilde{Y} \quad \tilde{G} = ((\beta_i, \beta_j))_{nn}$$

$$\tilde{G} = P^* G P \quad \text{复相合、共轭相合}$$

推论  $G \geq 0 \Leftrightarrow G$  相合于 1

Schmidt-Gram 正交化 法：内积算法

$\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n$  为标准正交基

$$(\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n) = (a_1, \dots, a_n)U \quad \text{标准正交基} (\Rightarrow U^*U=I)$$

酉方阵全体  $U_n$  表示 — 阶群

① 所有行(列)构成  $U^n$  标准正交基

②  $A, B \in U_n \Rightarrow AB \in U_n$

③  $A \in U_n \Rightarrow A^{-1} \in U_n$

$W$  为  $V$  的子空间  $\Leftrightarrow V = W \oplus W^\perp$

$V_1, V_2$  为两个向空间,  $f: V_1 \rightarrow V_2$  满足 ① 双射 ② 保线性 ③ 保内积

称  $f$  为  $V_1$  与  $V_2$  间同构映射  $V_1 \cong V_2 \Leftrightarrow \dim V_1 = \dim V_2$

对偶空间:  $V$  上所有线性函数全体按加法与数乘构成线性空间  $V^*$

1)  $V \cong V^*$   $f: \beta \mapsto f_\beta \quad f_\beta(\alpha) := \underline{\langle \beta, \alpha \rangle}$

$\Rightarrow \beta_1, \dots, \beta_n$  为  $V$  的一组基  $\Rightarrow f_{\beta_1}, \dots, f_{\beta_n}$  为  $V^*$  的一组基 — 对偶基

## 4.4 向量空间上的线性变换

V-向量空间  $\lambda$  为 V 上线性变换

- ①  $\lambda$  为酉变换  $\Leftrightarrow \langle \lambda\alpha, \lambda\beta \rangle = \langle \alpha, \beta \rangle$ ,  $\forall \alpha, \beta \in V \Leftrightarrow |\lambda\alpha|^2 = |\alpha|^2, \forall \alpha \in V$
- ②  $\lambda$  在一组正交基下矩阵为酉方阵  $\Leftrightarrow \lambda$  将一组标准正交基变为另一组标准正交基
- ③  $\lambda$  为 Hermitian 变换  $\Leftrightarrow \langle \lambda\alpha, \beta \rangle = \langle \alpha, \lambda\beta \rangle \quad \forall \alpha, \beta \in V$
- ④  $\lambda$  在一组标准正交基下矩阵为 Hermitian 矩阵

存在唯一变换  $\lambda^*$ :  $\langle \lambda\alpha, \beta \rangle = \langle \alpha, \lambda^*\beta \rangle \quad \forall \alpha, \beta$

$\lambda^*$  称为  $\lambda$  的伴随变换

$\lambda$  在一组标准正交基下矩阵为  $A \quad A^* = A^T$

$\lambda$  为规范变换  $\Leftrightarrow \lambda^* \lambda = \lambda \lambda^* \Leftrightarrow A^* A = A A^* \leftarrow$  规范方阵

$\lambda$  为反对称变换  $\Leftrightarrow \lambda^* = -\lambda \Leftrightarrow A = -A^T \quad A$  满足  $A^T = -A$

$A \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$  酉相似  $U^* A U$  最简形式  $U^{-1} = U^*$   
 $= U^* A U$

定理 1  $A \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$  则 A 酉相似于上三角阵

pf: 归纳法  $n=1$

设入为 A 的特征值,  $x_i$  为对应特征向量,  $|x_i|>0 \quad Ax_i = \lambda_i x_i$

将  $x_i$  扩充为  $\mathbb{C}^n$  标准正交基  $A(x_1, \dots, x_n) = (x_1, \dots, x_n) \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & * \\ 0 & A \end{pmatrix}$

定理 2  $A \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$   $A$  为规范方阵  $\Leftrightarrow A$  酉相似于对角阵

pf.  $\Leftarrow A = U(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n)U^* \quad AA^* = U(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n)U^*U(\bar{\lambda}_1, \dots, \bar{\lambda}_n)U^* = U(\lambda_1^2, \dots, \lambda_n^2)U$   
 $\Rightarrow A = UTU^* \quad T = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & * \\ 0 & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} = (t_{ij})_{n \times n}$

$AA^* = A^*A \Rightarrow T^*T = TT^* \Rightarrow T = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$

$\therefore \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & * \\ 0 & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \bar{\lambda}_1 & 0 \\ 0 & \bar{\lambda}_n \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \bar{\lambda}_1 & 0 \\ t_{1j} & \bar{\lambda}_n \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & * \\ 0 & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix}$

$$|\lambda_1|^2 + \sum_{j=2}^n |t_{1j}|^2 = |\lambda_1|^2 \Rightarrow t_{1j} = 0$$

#

定理3 (Schur)

$A \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$  则  $\text{Tr}(A^* A) \geq \sum_{i=1}^n |\lambda_i|^2$   $\lambda_i$  为  $A$  的特征值

等式成立  $\Leftrightarrow A$  为规范方阵

$$\text{pf: } \Leftrightarrow A = U \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} U^* \quad A^* A = U \begin{pmatrix} |\lambda_1|^2 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & |\lambda_n|^2 \end{pmatrix} U^*$$

$$\text{Tr}(A^* A) = \sum_{i=1}^n |\lambda_i|^2$$

$$A = U \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} U^*$$

$$A^* A = U T^* T U^*$$

$$\text{Tr}(A^* A) = \text{Tr}(T^* T)$$

Hermite 矩阵 相似于  $\text{diag}(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n)$   $\lambda_i$  为实数

$\lambda_i$  为纯虚数

反. . . . .

$$|x_i|=1$$

E.g. 1  $A$  为规范变换 且  $Ax = \lambda x$  ( $x \neq 0$ ) 则  $A^* x = \bar{\lambda} x$

$$\text{pf: } ((A^* - \bar{\lambda} I)x, (A^* - \bar{\lambda} I)x) = (x, (A - \lambda I)(A^* - \bar{\lambda} I)x)$$

$$= (x, 0) = 0 \Rightarrow A^* x = \bar{\lambda} x$$

$$A = U \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} U^*$$

$$Ax = \lambda_i x \quad A^*$$

$$A^* = U \begin{pmatrix} \bar{\lambda}_1 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \bar{\lambda}_n \end{pmatrix} U^*$$

E.g. 2  $A$  为规范变换  $A$  的不同特征值对应特征向量彼此正交

$$\text{pf: } Ax_1 = \lambda_1 x_1 \quad Ax_2 = \lambda_2 x_2 \quad \lambda_1 \neq \lambda_2$$

$$\Rightarrow A^* x_1 = \bar{\lambda}_1 x_1$$

$$(A^* x_1, x_2) = (\bar{\lambda}_1 x_1, x_2) = \bar{\lambda}_1 (x_1, x_2) = (x_1, Ax_2) = (x_1, \lambda_2 x_2) = \lambda_2 (x_1, x_2) \Rightarrow 0$$

E.g. 3  $A \in \mathbb{C}^{n \times n}$   $A$  为规范方阵  $\Leftrightarrow A^* = f(A)$   $f(\lambda) \in F(\lambda)$

$$\text{pf: } \Leftrightarrow A^* = f(A) \quad A^* A = A A^* = A f(A)$$

$$\Rightarrow A = U \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} U^* \quad U \text{ 正交阵}$$

$$A^* = U \begin{pmatrix} \bar{\lambda}_1 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \bar{\lambda}_n \end{pmatrix} U^* \Rightarrow \exists f(\lambda) \text{ s.t. } \bar{\lambda}_i = f(\lambda_i) \quad i=1, \dots, n$$

$$P(A\lambda) = (\lambda - \lambda_1)^{n_1} \cdots (\lambda - \lambda_s)^{n_s}$$

$\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_s$  为不同特征值

找  $f_{\lambda}$  st.  $f(\lambda_i) = \bar{\lambda}_i \quad i=1, \dots, s$

$$f_{\lambda} = f_0 + f_1 \lambda + \cdots + f_s \lambda^{s-1}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & \lambda_1 & \cdots & \lambda_1^{s-1} \\ 1 & \lambda_2 & \cdots & \lambda_2^{s-1} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \ddots & \vdots \\ 1 & \lambda_s & \cdots & \lambda_s^{s-1} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} f_0 \\ f_1 \\ \vdots \\ f_s \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} \bar{\lambda}_1 \\ \bar{\lambda}_2 \\ \vdots \\ \bar{\lambda}_s \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\sum_{i=1}^s |\lambda_i|^2 \quad \lambda_i \text{ 为 } A \text{ 特征值}$$

P53

2 4 6

P532

3 4 6 8

$\lambda$  为  $V$  的特征值  $A$  为  $V$  上正交变换  $\Leftrightarrow (\lambda A, \lambda B) = 1$ ,  $\lambda \in V$

$\Leftrightarrow |\lambda A| = |\lambda|$   $\lambda \in V \Leftrightarrow A$  在一组标准正交基下矩阵为正交阵

$\Leftrightarrow A$  将标准正交基变为标准正交基

$O(V) := \{V\text{ 上正交变换}\} - \text{正交群}$

(1)  $\mathcal{O}(V) \ni A, B \in O(V) \Rightarrow AB \in O(V)$

(2)  $A \in O(V), A^T \in O(V)$

### 例1 确定 $R^2$ 上所有正交变换

$$\text{① } A(e_1, e_2) = (e_1, e_2) \begin{pmatrix} \cos \alpha & -\sin \alpha \\ \sin \alpha & \cos \alpha \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\vec{v}_1 = \begin{pmatrix} \cos \alpha \\ \sin \alpha \end{pmatrix}, \vec{v}_2 = \begin{pmatrix} \sin \alpha \\ \cos \alpha \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\vec{v}' = \begin{pmatrix} \sin \alpha \\ -\cos \alpha \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\text{② } A(e_1, e_2) = (e_1, e_2) \begin{pmatrix} \cos \alpha & \sin \alpha \\ \sin \alpha & -\cos \alpha \end{pmatrix}, \quad \lambda_1=1, \lambda_2=-1$$

例2  $A$  为  $R^3$  中正交变换  $\det A = 1$  则  $A$  为绕某轴旋转变换

设此特征值为  $\lambda_1, \lambda_2, \lambda_3$   $\lambda_1 \lambda_2 \lambda_3 = 1$  设入为实  $\lambda = 1$

对应入特征向量  $x_1, |x_1|=1, Ax_1=x_1$

存在标准正交基  $x_1, x_2, x_3$  s.t.  $A(x_1, x_2, x_3) = (x_1, x_2, x_3) \begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & \cos \theta & \sin \theta \\ 0 & \sin \theta & -\cos \theta \end{pmatrix}$

例3  $A$  为  $n$  阶正交方阵 且  $\gamma(A-1)=1$  求  $A$  的正交相似标准型

$A$  正交相似标准型  $D$   $\gamma(D-1)=\gamma(A-1)=1$

$$D = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & & & \\ & \ddots & & \\ & & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

## 2 对称变换

$\forall \alpha, \beta \in V$  有  $\alpha^\# \# \beta = (\alpha, \beta)$

$\Leftrightarrow A$  在一组标准正交基下矩阵为对称矩阵

对称变换特征值均为实数 不同特征值对应特征向量彼此正交

实对称矩阵正交相似于对角阵  $A = P \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} P^{-1}$   $P$  正交

## 3 规范变换

**命题 1**  $A$  为 Euclid 空间  $V$  上线性变换, 则存在  $V$  上唯一规范变换  $A^*$  满足

$$(\alpha^\# \beta) = (\alpha, \beta^* \beta) \quad \forall \alpha, \beta \in V$$

adjoint

$\therefore A$  在一组标准正交基  $M$  下矩阵为  $A$ , 则  $A^*$  在  $M$  下矩阵为  $A^T$ , 即  $A^*$  为  $A$  的伴随变换

( $P^T = P^{-1}$ )

与空间的关系

$$\sqrt{(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n)} = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) A \quad \{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\}, \{\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n\} \text{ 标准正交基}$$

$$A(\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n) = (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n) B \quad (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_n) = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) P \text{ 一正交}$$

$$B = P^T A P \quad \rightarrow P^T A P$$

**定义 1**  $A, B \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  若存在正交矩阵  $P$ , s.t.  $B = P^T A P$  则称  $A$  与  $B$  正交相似:

**引理 1**  $V$  为 Euclid 空间,  $A$  为  $V$  上正交变换,  $W$  为  $A$  的不变子空间 则  $W^\perp$  也为  $A$  的不变子空间

$$Pf: \forall \beta \in W^\perp \Rightarrow \forall \beta \in W^\perp \Leftrightarrow H \notin W \quad (\alpha, \beta) = 0$$

$$\Leftrightarrow (A^\# \alpha, \beta) = 0$$

$$AW = W \Rightarrow A^T W = W$$

$\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_r\}$  为  $W$  的标准正交基, 扩充为  $V$  的标准正交基  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_r, \dots, \alpha_n\}$

$$A(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ 0 & A_{22} \end{pmatrix} = A \quad \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ 0 & A_{22} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ 0 & A_{22} \end{pmatrix}^T = \begin{pmatrix} I_r & 0 \\ 0 & I_{n-r} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\Rightarrow \begin{cases} A_{11} A_{11}^T + A_{12} A_{12}^T = I_r \\ A_{12} A_{22}^T = 0 \quad A_{22} A_{22}^T = I_{n-r} \end{cases}$$

$$\therefore A_{11} \neq 0 \quad A_{11}, A_{22} \text{ 正交} \quad A = \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ 0 & A_{22} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$A(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ 0 & A_{22} \end{pmatrix}$$

$\therefore W^\perp$  也为  $A$  的不变子空间

$A$

(部分补充吧...)

$$b_{k,0} \Rightarrow \cos(\theta_k) + i\sin(\theta_k)$$

定理1  $A$  为  $n$  阶正交阵 其特征值为  $\alpha_k + i\beta_k$   $k=1, 2, \dots, n$

$A$  与  $A$  正交相似

$$D = \text{Diag} \begin{pmatrix} \cos(\theta_1) & -\sin(\theta_1) \\ \sin(\theta_1) & \cos(\theta_1) \end{pmatrix} \cdots \begin{pmatrix} \cos(\theta_n) & -\sin(\theta_n) \\ \sin(\theta_n) & \cos(\theta_n) \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} 1 & & & \\ & 1 & & \\ & & \ddots & \\ & & & 1 \end{pmatrix}$$

PF: 回归方法  $n=1$   $n=2$   $\begin{pmatrix} \cos(\theta_1) & -\sin(\theta_1) \\ \sin(\theta_1) & \cos(\theta_1) \end{pmatrix}$  或  $\begin{pmatrix} 1 & \\ & 1 \end{pmatrix}$

$n \geq 3$  时

1°  $A$  有实特征值  $\lambda_1$  对应特征向量  $x_1$   $|x_1|=1$

$Ax_1 = \lambda_1 x_1$  将  $x_1$  扩充为  $\mathbb{R}^n$  标准正交基  $x_1, \dots, x_n$

$$A_1 x_1, \dots, x_n = |x_1, \dots, x_n| \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & 0 \\ A_{21} & \lambda_1 \end{pmatrix} \quad \tilde{A} \text{ 正交} \Rightarrow A_{11} \text{ 正交}, A_{21}=0$$

$$AP = P \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_1 \end{pmatrix} \quad P \text{ 正交}, A_{11} \text{ 正交}$$

$$\therefore A = P \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_1 \end{pmatrix} P^{-1} \quad A_{11} = \tilde{P} \begin{pmatrix} D_{11} & 0 \\ 0 & \lambda_1 \end{pmatrix} \tilde{P}^{-1}$$

$$= P \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{P} & \\ & 1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} D_{11} & \\ & \lambda_1 \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} \tilde{P} & \\ & 1 \end{pmatrix}^{-1} P^{-1}$$

2°  $A$  无实根 设  $\cos(\theta_i) + i\sin(\theta_i)$  为  $A$  的一对复根, 设对应特征向量  $x_1, x_2$

$$A(x_1 + ix_2) = (\cos(\theta_i) + i\sin(\theta_i))(x_1 + ix_2)$$

$$\Rightarrow A(x_1, x_2) = |x_1, x_2| \begin{pmatrix} \cos(\theta_i) & \sin(\theta_i) \\ -\sin(\theta_i) & \cos(\theta_i) \end{pmatrix} \Rightarrow |x_1, x_2|=0 \quad |x_1|=|x_2|$$

将  $\{x_1, x_2\}$  扩充为  $\mathbb{R}^n$  标准正交基  $\{x_1, \dots, x_n\}$

$$A(x_1, \dots, x_n) = (x_1, \dots, x_n) \begin{pmatrix} \cos(\theta_i) & \sin(\theta_i) & & \\ -\sin(\theta_i) & \cos(\theta_i) & & \\ & & A_{12} & \\ & & & 0 \end{pmatrix} \quad A_{12}=0 \quad A_{22} \text{ 正交}$$

$$P_{5,0,1}$$

$$3 \ 5 \ 6$$

$$P_{5,0,7}$$

$$2 \ 8$$

$$P_{5,1,8}$$

$$2 \ 5 \ 9$$

# 一、规范变换

$$PF: \sqrt{A}(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n)A$$

$$\sqrt{A} = AX \quad \sqrt{B} = AY \quad \text{设 } \sqrt{A^T}(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n)A^T$$

$$(\sqrt{A}\alpha, \beta) = (\alpha, \sqrt{A}\beta) = X^T(A^T\beta)$$

$$= (AX)^T\beta = X^T A^T \beta$$

#

性质  $(\sqrt{A})^* = \sqrt{A}$   $\sqrt{A}^* + B^* = (\sqrt{A} + B)^*$

多种性质整理  $(X\sqrt{A})^* = \lambda \sqrt{A}^*$   $(\sqrt{A}\beta)^* = B^* \sqrt{A}^*$

正交  $\Rightarrow (\alpha, \beta) = (\sqrt{A}\alpha, \sqrt{A}\beta) = (\alpha, \sqrt{A^T}A\beta) \Leftrightarrow \sqrt{A^T}A = I \Leftrightarrow A^*A = I$

对称  $\Rightarrow (\sqrt{A}\alpha, \beta) = (\alpha, \sqrt{A}\beta) \Rightarrow \sqrt{A}, \sqrt{A}^* \Leftrightarrow A = A^T$

定义 标准化  $\sqrt{A}\sqrt{A}^* = \sqrt{A}^*\sqrt{A}$  为规范变换

示例:  $A^T = A^*A$  规范矩阵

$\sqrt{A} = -A$  也规范

$\sqrt{A}$  正交,  $\sqrt{A}^*$  规范

引理1 设  $A$  为  $V$  上规范变换,  $W$  为  $A$  不变子空间  $\Rightarrow W^\perp$  也为  $A$ .

(部分补充) 设  $(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n)$  标准正交基, 扩充  $\{\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n\} \Rightarrow V$

$$\sqrt{A}(\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) = (\alpha_1, \dots, \alpha_n) \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ 0 & A_{22} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ 0 & A_{22} \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} A_{11}^T & 0 \\ A_{12}^T & A_{22}^T \end{pmatrix} = \begin{pmatrix} A_{11}^T & 0 \\ A_{12}^T & A_{22}^T \end{pmatrix} \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & A_{12} \\ 0 & A_{22} \end{pmatrix}$$

$$\Rightarrow (A_{11}A_{11}^T + A_{12}A_{12}^T = A_{11}^TA_{11})$$

$$Tr(A_{11}A_{11}^T) + Tr(A_{12}A_{12}^T) = Tr(A_{11}^TA_{11})$$

$$\Rightarrow Tr(A_{12}A_{12}^T) = 0 \Rightarrow A_{12} = 0 \quad A = \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & 0 \\ 0 & A_{22} \end{pmatrix} \quad A_{11}, A_{22} \text{ 规范}$$

引理2  $A$  规范  $\Rightarrow P^TAP$  正交 则  $B$  也规范

"规范的相似传递性"

验证  $B^TB = BB^T$

例1 确定二阶规范矩阵

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ c & d \end{pmatrix} \quad AA^T = A^TA \Rightarrow A = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ b & d \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow \text{对称}$$

or  $a = \begin{pmatrix} a & b \\ -b & a \end{pmatrix}$   $b \neq 0$   $\lambda$  旋转

→ 接下页

正定(半正定)方阵 (positive definite)

2019.1.2

A为实对称  $\forall \mathbf{0} \neq \mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{C}^n$   $\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} > 0$  正定

$\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} \geq 0$  半正定

$\mathbf{H}$  为 Hermite 阵 ( $\mathbf{H}^\top = \mathbf{H}$ )  $\forall \mathbf{0} \neq \mathbf{x} \in \mathbb{C}^n$   $\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{H} \mathbf{x} > 0$  正定 Hermite 阵

$\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{H} \mathbf{x} \geq 0$  半正定

(证 B)

定理 1  $A$  为 实对称 方阵, 则下列命题等价

(1)  $A$  为正定方阵

相合运算, 正定性不变

$$\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{P}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{P} \quad \Lambda = \text{diag}(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n)$$

$$\mathbf{A} > 0$$

$$\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{P}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{P} \mathbf{x} = (\mathbf{Px})^\top \mathbf{A} (\mathbf{Px}) = \mathbf{y}^\top \mathbf{Ay} > 0$$

(2) 存在可逆阵  $\mathbf{P}$ , st.  $\mathbf{P}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{P} \succ 0$

(3)  $A$  的特征值均为正实数

$$\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{P}^\top \Lambda \mathbf{P} \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{y}^\top \Lambda \mathbf{y} = \lambda_1 y_1^2 + \dots + \lambda_n y_n^2 > 0$$

(4) 存在可逆阵  $\mathbf{P}$ , st.  $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{P}^\top \mathbf{P}$

(5)  $A$  的各阶顺序主子式均为正

(6) 存在正定方阵  $B$ , st.  $A = B^2$ , 且  $B$  由  $A$  唯一确定

4.  $A = P^\top P$   $\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{P}^\top \mathbf{P} \mathbf{x} = \mathbf{y}^\top \mathbf{y} > 0$

$$A = P^\top A P = P^\top \underbrace{\Lambda}_{Q^\top Q} P = Q^\top Q$$

5.  $A > 0 \Rightarrow$  所有主子式都  $> 0$   $A = \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & & \\ & \ddots & & \\ & & \lambda_k & \\ & & & \ddots & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} > 0$

$\mathbf{x} = (0, x_{11}, x_{12}, 0, \dots, x_{1n})$  针对行列取  $\mathbf{x}$   $\mathbf{x}^\top \mathbf{A} \mathbf{x} > 0$

$\Leftarrow$  归纳法 (反证)

$$A = \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & C \\ C^\top & \alpha_{nn} \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow P^\top A P = \begin{pmatrix} A_{11} & 0 \\ 0 & \alpha_{nn} - C A_{11}^{-1} C^\top \end{pmatrix} + Q > 0$$

↑ key: 弄成准对角阵归纳

6.  $A > 0 \quad A = P^\top (\lambda_1 \ \dots \ \lambda_n) P$

$$= P^\top \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{\lambda_1} & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \sqrt{\lambda_n} \end{pmatrix} P \cdot P^\top \begin{pmatrix} \sqrt{\lambda_1} & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \sqrt{\lambda_n} \end{pmatrix} P = B^2 \quad B \text{ 也正定}$$

小结: 若  $A = B^2$   $B \succ 0 \rightarrow A \succ 0$

Pf:

$$B \text{ 唯一性: } B_1 > 0 \quad B_2 > 0 \quad B_1^2 = B_2^2 = A$$

同法

$$B_1 = P_1 \Lambda_1 P_1$$

$$B_2 = P_2 \Lambda_2 P_2$$

$\Lambda_1, \Lambda_2$  为对角阵

$$\Lambda_1 = \text{diag}(\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n) \quad \lambda_1 \geq \lambda_2 \geq \dots \geq \lambda_n$$

$$\Lambda_2 = \text{diag}(\mu_1, \dots, \mu_n) \quad \mu_1 \geq \dots \geq \mu_n$$

$$B_1^2 = B_2^2 \Rightarrow \lambda_i^2 = \mu_i^2 \Rightarrow \lambda_i = \mu_i \quad i=1, \dots, n$$

$$B_1^2 = P_1^T \Lambda^2 P_1 = P_2^T \Lambda^2 P_2 \Rightarrow P_1^T \Lambda P_1 = P_2^T \Lambda P_2 \quad PA = AP \Leftrightarrow P_{ij} \lambda_i = \lambda_j P_{ij}$$

$$P_2 P_1^T \Lambda^2 = \Lambda^2 P_2 P_1^T \Rightarrow P_1^T \Lambda^2 = \Lambda^2 P \rightarrow P_{ij} \lambda_i^2 = \lambda_j^2 P_{ij}$$

$$\text{① } \lambda_i^2 = \lambda_j^2 \Rightarrow \lambda_i = \lambda_j \quad P_{ij} \lambda_i = \lambda_j P_{ij}$$

$$\text{② } \lambda_i^2 \neq \lambda_j^2 \Rightarrow P_{ij} = 0 \Rightarrow P_{ij} \lambda_i = \lambda_j P_{ij}$$

定理2  $A$  为  $n$  阶实对称矩阵，则下列命题等价：

$$(1) A \geq 0$$

$$(2) \text{ 存在可逆 } P, P^T A P \geq 0$$

(3)  $A$  的特征值均为非负实数

$$(4) A = P^T P, P \text{ 为实方阵}$$

$$(5) X \text{ 半正定} \Rightarrow \text{所有顺序主子式} \geq 0 \quad \text{反推 } X$$

$$(6) A = B^2, B \text{ 唯一} \quad B \geq 0$$

定理3  $H$  为 Hermite 矩阵，则下列命题等价：

$$(1) H \geq 0$$

$$(1) H \geq 0$$

$$(2) \text{ 存在可逆 } P, P^* H P \geq 0$$

$$(2) P^* H P \geq 0$$

(3)  $H$  的特征值均为正

(3) 特征值非负

$$(4) H = P^* P, P \text{ 可逆}$$

$$(4) H = P^* P$$

$$(5) H \text{ 的顺序主子式均为正}$$

$$(5) H = H^2 \quad H \geq 0$$

$$(6) \exists B \text{ s.t. } H \geq B \quad H = H^2, H \text{ 唯一}$$

定理 1  $A, B \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$  如果存在正交矩阵  $P, Q$  st.  $B = P A Q$ , 称  $A$  与  $B$  正交相似  
( $P, Q$  不改变度量)

$A, B \in \mathbb{C}^{m \times n}$  ... 有 ... —— 正交相似

定理 2  $A \in \mathbb{R}^{m \times n}$  则  $A$  正交相似于  $\Lambda = \begin{pmatrix} G_1 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & G_r & 0 \\ & & & \ddots & 0 \\ 0 & & & & \ddots & 0 \end{pmatrix}$   $G_1 \geq G_2 \geq \dots \geq G_r > 0$   
 $G_1, \dots, G_r$  为  $A$  的奇异值  $G_i = \sqrt{\lambda_i(A^T A)}$  (向  $C$ : 酉矩阵)

$A = U \Lambda V$  ( $U, V$  正交) SVD (Singular Value Decomposition)

pf:  $A^T A = U \begin{pmatrix} G_1^2 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & G_r^2 & 0 \\ & & & \ddots & 0 \end{pmatrix} U^T$   $U^T A^T A U = \begin{pmatrix} G_1^2 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & G_r^2 & 0 \\ & & & \ddots & 0 \end{pmatrix}$

$B = (B_1, \dots, B_n)$   $B^T B = \begin{pmatrix} G_1^2 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & G_r^2 & 0 \\ & & & \ddots & 0 \end{pmatrix}$   $B_1, \dots, B_r$  为此正交  $B_{r+1} = \dots = 0$   
 $= (G_1 Y_1, \dots, G_r Y_r, 0, \dots, 0)$   $Y_1, \dots, Y_r$  單位正交

$A U = (Y_1, \dots, Y_r, \dots, Y_n) \begin{pmatrix} G_1 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & G_r & 0 \\ & & & \ddots & 0 \end{pmatrix}$

$\therefore A = V \begin{pmatrix} G_1 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & G_r & 0 \\ & & & \ddots & 0 \end{pmatrix} U^T$

推广  $A = SO \times D \times O$  正交

pf:  $A = U \Lambda V = \frac{\sqrt{\Lambda} \cdot U^T}{S} \frac{U V}{O}$

例 1  $A$  为  $n$  阶实对称正定矩阵 证:  $\det A = \left(\frac{\text{Tr}(A)}{n}\right)^n$

pf:  $A$  的特征值为  $\lambda_1, \dots, \lambda_n > 0$   $\downarrow \lambda_1 \cdots \lambda_n = \left(\frac{\lambda_1 + \dots + \lambda_n}{n}\right)^n$

例 2  $A > 0$   $B$  矩阵 对称 则  $A, B$  可同时相似于对角阵

Rp 存在矩阵  $P$  st.  $P^T A P, P^T B P$  为对角阵

pf:  $A > 0$  存在正交矩阵  $P$  st.  $P^T A P = I$   $P^T B P$  为对角阵

$\exists P_1 \quad A_1 = P_1^T A P_1 = I \quad B_1 = P_1^T B P_1$

120  $\exists P_2 \quad A_2 = P_2^T A P_2 \quad P_2^T B P_2 = B$  对角

全 P<sup>T</sup>P = I, P<sup>T</sup>BP = P<sup>T</sup>B对角

例3 A > 0 证 存在上三角阵 st. A = P<sup>T</sup>R  
pf: 存在归一化 P, st. A = P<sup>T</sup>P  $\xrightarrow{\text{P} = QR}$  (反演, R-三角)  
 $\xrightarrow{\text{P}^TQ^TQR = P^TR}$

例4. S > 0 k 为反对称矩阵 证:  $\det(S+k) \geq \det S$

pf: S = I  $\det(I+k) \geq 1$

反对称  $k = P^T \begin{pmatrix} 0 & b \\ -b & 0 \end{pmatrix} P$   $P \in \mathbb{R}$

$I+k = P^T \begin{pmatrix} 1 & b \\ -b & 1 \end{pmatrix} P \quad \det(I+k) = (1+b^2) - (1+b^2) \geq 1$

一般地  $S > P^TP$  P 可逆  $\det(S+k) = \det(P(I+k)(P^T)) = (\det P)^2 \det(I+k) \geq (\det P)$

例5  $A = (a_{ij})_{n \times n} > 0$  证:  $\det A \leq a_{11}a_{22} \cdots a_{nn}$

pf: 归纳法 相乘法

$A = \begin{pmatrix} A_{m \times m} & C \\ 0 & a_{m+1, m+1} \end{pmatrix} \rightarrow P^TAP \quad Q \geq a_{m+1, m+1} C^T C = a_{m+1, m+1}$

$\det(A) = \det(A_m) Q \leq a_{11} \cdots a_{mm} \cdot a_{m+1, m+1}$

例6 (Hadamard)  $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times n}$  证  $|\det A| \leq \prod_{i=1}^n \sqrt{\sum_{j=1}^n a_{ij}^2}$

pf: 该 A 非奇异  $A^T A > 0$   $\det(A^T A) \leq s_1 \cdots s_n \uparrow$  且  $s_i = (s_{ij})$

(奇异值分解)

例7.  $A \in \mathbb{R}^{n \times m}$  证:  $\text{Tr}(A) = \text{Tr}(A^T A)^{1/2}$

pf:  $A = U \begin{pmatrix} 6_1 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & 0 \end{pmatrix} V^T$   $(A^T A)^{1/2} = U \begin{pmatrix} 6_1 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & 0 \end{pmatrix} U^T$   $\text{Tr}(A^T A)^{1/2} = \sum_{i=1}^r 6_i$  奇异值之和

$$A = U \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} V^T$$

$$\text{Tr}(A) = \text{Tr}\left(\begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} V^T\right) = \sum \lambda_i \quad \text{D 为正交矩阵 } D = (d_{ij})_{n \times n}$$

$\downarrow$

$\therefore \text{Tr}(A) = \sum \lambda_i d_{ii} \quad \because \lambda_i \text{ 为正交阵, 不素绝对值} \leq 1$

B18.  $H_1, H_2$  为 Hermite 阵  $H_1 > 0$  则  $H_1 + H_2 > 0 \Leftrightarrow H_1^{-\frac{1}{2}} H_2 H_1^{-\frac{1}{2}}$  特征值均大于 0

pf:  $H_1 = I \quad I + H_2 > 0 \Leftrightarrow H_2$  特征值 > -1

$$H_2 = P^T \begin{pmatrix} \lambda_1 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} P \quad I + H_2 = P^T \begin{pmatrix} 1 + \lambda_1 & & \\ & \ddots & \\ & & 1 + \lambda_n \end{pmatrix} P > 0 \Leftrightarrow 1 + \lambda_i > 0 \Leftrightarrow \lambda_i > -1$$

$$H_1 + H_2 > 0 \Leftrightarrow H_1^{\frac{1}{2}} (I + H_1^{-\frac{1}{2}} H_2 H_1^{-\frac{1}{2}}) H_1^{\frac{1}{2}} > 0$$

$$\Leftrightarrow I + H_1^{-\frac{1}{2}} H_2 H_1^{-\frac{1}{2}} > 0 \Leftrightarrow H_1^{-\frac{1}{2}} H_2 H_1^{-\frac{1}{2}}$$
 特征值均 > -1

$$H_1^{\frac{1}{2}} H_2 H_1^{\frac{1}{2}} \sim H_1^{-\frac{1}{2}} H_2 = H_1^{-\frac{1}{2}} (H_1^{-\frac{1}{2}} H_2 H_1^{-\frac{1}{2}}) H_1^{\frac{1}{2}}$$

B19  $A > B > 0 \Rightarrow \det A > \det B$

$$A - B > 0 \Leftrightarrow I - A^{-\frac{1}{2}} B A^{-\frac{1}{2}} > 0 \Leftrightarrow A^{\frac{1}{2}} B A^{-\frac{1}{2}}$$
 特征值 = 1

$$\det(A^{\frac{1}{2}} B A^{-\frac{1}{2}}) = 1$$

$\therefore \det B \leq \det A$

P463

线性空间

9 10

线性变换

P555

Jordan 标准型

1-7

Euclid 空间与酉空间